

MyID MFA and PSM Version 5.1

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide

Lutterworth Hall, St Mary's Road, Lutterworth, Leicestershire, LE17 4PS, UK www.intercede.com | info@intercede.com | @intercedemyid | +44 (0)1455 558111



Copyright

© 2001-2025 Intercede Limited. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished exclusively under a restricted license or non-disclosure agreement. Copies of software supplied by Intercede Limited may not be used resold or disclosed to third parties or used for any commercial purpose without written authorization from Intercede Limited and will perpetually remain the property of Intercede Limited. They may not be transferred to any computer without both a service contract for the use of the software on that computer being in existence and written authorization from Intercede Limited.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Intercede Limited.

Whilst Intercede Limited has made every effort in the preparation of this manual to ensure the accuracy of the information, the information contained in this manual is delivered without warranty, either express or implied. Intercede Limited will not be held liable for any damages caused, or alleged to be caused, either directly or indirectly by this manual.

Licenses and Trademarks

The Intercede[®] and MyID[®] word marks and the MyID[®] logo are registered trademarks of Intercede in the UK, US and other countries.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Other brands and their products are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders and should be noted as such. All other trademarks acknowledged.



Conventions used in this document

- Lists:
 - Numbered lists are used to show the steps involved in completing a task when the order is important.
 - Bulleted lists are used when the order is unimportant or to show alternatives.
- Bold is used for menu items and for labels.

For example:

- Record a valid email address in 'From' email address.
- Select Save from the File menu.
- *Italic* is used for emphasis:

For example:

- Copy the file *before* starting the installation.
- Do not remove the files before you have backed them up.
- Bold and italic hyperlinks are used to identify the titles of other documents.

For example: "See the *Release Notes* for further information."

Unless otherwise explicitly stated, all referenced documentation is available on the product installation media.

- A fixed width font is used where the identification of spaces is important, including filenames, example SQL queries and any entries made directly into configuration files or the database.
- **Notes** are used to provide further information, including any prerequisites or configuration additional to the standard specifications.

For example:

Note: This issue only occurs if updating from a previous version.

• Warnings are used to indicate where failure to follow a particular instruction may result in either loss of data or the need to manually configure elements of the system.

For example:

Warning: You must take a backup of your database before making any changes to it.



Contents

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide	1
Copyright	
Conventions used in this document	3
Contents	4
1 Introduction	9
1.1 Considerations	9
1.1.1 System requirements	9
1.1.2 Rights and permissions	10
1.1.3 Password Breach Databases	10
1.1.4 High availability	11
1.1.5 Database backup and restoration	11
1.1.6 Developers	11
1.1.7 Language requirements	11
1.2 Internet connectivity	11
1.2.1 Mobile Push Authentication	12
1.2.2 Password Breach Database	12
1.2.3 Licensing	12
1.3 Licensing	12
1.3.1 License functionality	13
1.3.2 Evaluation license	13
1.3.3 Free license	
2 Design and deployment scenarios	
2.1 Mobile push authentication	
2.1.1 Overview	
2.1.2 Public Push Networks	
2.2 Passwordless MFA	
2.2.1 Mobile Push	
2.2.2 Passwordless for Windows	
2.2.3 The MyID Server Password Vault	
2.2.4 The Windows Desktop Agent	
2.2.5 The Domain Controller Agent	
2.3 Active Directory permissions	
2.4 Integration with MyID CMS	
2.4.1 Required information	
2.4.2 High Availability integration	
2.5 Deployment checklist	
3 Multi-Factor Authentication technology	
3.1 Mobile Push authentication technology	
3.2 Grid Pattern technology	
3.2.1 How it works – example	
3.3 Phrase authentication technology	
3.3.1 Authentication scenario #1 – deviceless authentication	
3.3.2 Authentication scenario #2 – multi-factor authentication	27



	3.4 One Time Code technology	
	3.5 Standard OATH TOTP	
	3.6 YubiKey OTP	
	3.7 FIDO Passkeys for the Enterprise	
	3.7.1 Windows Managed Password for FIDO credentials	.30
	3.8 Authentication Technology against Factor type	
	3.9 Automatic MFA determination and SSO assurance levels	
	3.9.1 Hierarchy	
	3.10 Federation server	
	3.10.1 ADFS replacement	
4 D	eployment	.33
	4.1 High Availability and certificates	
	4.2 Installing the MyID Authentication Server	
	4.3 Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server	. 41
	4.3.1 Active Directory metadata	. 42
	4.4 Updates and upgrades	.42
	4.5 Installing an update	
	4.6 Installing an upgrade	
	4.6.1 Upgrading from version 4.2	
	4.6.2 Windows Desktop Agent compatibility	. 49
	4.7 Certificate export and import	
	4.7.1 Exporting a certificate from an existing MyID Authentication Server	.50
	4.7.2 Import a certificate to a new MyID Authentication Server	
	4.8 MyID Authentication Server Directory configuration	
	4.8.1 Directory Configuration Wizard	. 63
	4.8.2 Add users to the MyID Administrators Group	. 66
	4.9 MyID license configuration	
	4.9.1 Getting a free 10 user license or a 30-day trial license	
	4.9.2 Importing an offline license file	.71
	4.9.3 Entering an existing license key	
	4.10 MyID Password Security Management Wizard	
	4.10.1 Starting the Password Security Management Wizard	
	4.11 YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	
	4.11.1 Starting the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	
5 A	dministering the MyID Authentication Server	
	5.1 MyID Management Console views	
	5.1.1 OUs / Containers view	
	5.1.2 All Users view	
	5.1.3 Updating PSM users	
	5.2 Global settings walkthrough	
	5.2.1 General tab	
	5.2.2 RADIUS tab	
	5.2.3 Alerts tab	
	5.2.4 Remediation tab	
	5.2.5 Schedule tab	102







5.8.2 Administrator role views	247
5.8.3 Managing administrative roles	
5.8.4 Managing the Password Security Management Users role	
5.9 Policies	
5.9.1 Access control policies	
5.10 The Web Management Portal	
5.10.1 Accessing the Web Management Portal	
5.10.2 Using the Web Management Portal	
5.10.3 Viewing all user events	
5.10.4 Viewing and disabling devices for a user account	
5.10.5 Removing a device from a user account	
5.10.6 Two-way identification	
5.11 Web Management Portal dashboards	
5.11.1 System Status	
5.11.2 Multi-Factor Authentication	
5.11.3 Password Security	
5.12 Customizing the portal interfaces	
5.12.1 Portal authentication type settings	272
5.12.2 IdP Logon Page customization	
5.12.3 SSP customization	274
5.12.4 Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization	
5.13 RADIUS communication	
5.13.1 Mobile Push MFA	
5.13.2 2-step logons (Access-Challenge)	
5.13.3 RADIUS extensions	
5.13.4 RADIUS server ports and protocols	
5.13.5 Adding a RADIUS client	
5.13.6 RADIUS policies	
6 Configuring MyID CMS settings	
7 Configuring the PSM password policy	
7.1 Configuring the MyID Password Policy settings	
7.1.1 The PSM Users role	
7.2 Main settings	
7.2.1 Primary password policy	
7.2.2 Complexity rules	
7.2.3 Dynamic password expiry	
7.2.4 Exception password policy	
7.3 Modifying the default domain policy	
7.4 Configuring custom password blacklist checking	
7.4.1 Wildcard usage within local blacklist	
7.5 Advanced password checking	
7.5.1 Heuristic scanning	
7.5.2 Password stemming	
7.5.3 Using both heuristic scanning and password stemming	
8 Advanced configuration	307



8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections 309 8.3 Active Directory timing 309 8.3 Active Directory timing 309 8.3.1 Domain access timeout 309 8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh 309 8.4 Diagnostics logging 310 8.4.1 Enabling logging 310 8.4.2 Setting the logging location 310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 311 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.1 Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers	
8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections 309 8.3 Active Directory timing 309 8.3 Active Directory timing 309 8.3.1 Domain access timeout 309 8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh 309 8.4 Diagnostics logging 310 8.4.1 Enabling logging 310 8.4.2 Setting the logging location 310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 311 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.1.1 Specifying Global Catalog Servers	
8.3 Active Directory timing .309 8.3.1 Domain access timeout .309 8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh .309 8.4 Diagnostics logging .310 8.4.1 Enabling logging .310 8.4.2 Setting the logging location .310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs .310 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files .311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs .312	8.1.2 Specifying Domain Controllers	
8.3.1 Domain access timeout3098.3.2 Domain Controller refresh3098.4 Diagnostics logging3108.4.1 Enabling logging3108.4.2 Setting the logging location3108.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs3108.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files3118.4.5 Example of rolling logs312	8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections	
8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh 309 8.4 Diagnostics logging 310 8.4.1 Enabling logging 310 8.4.2 Setting the logging location 310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 310 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.3 Active Directory timing	
8.4 Diagnostics logging 310 8.4.1 Enabling logging 310 8.4.2 Setting the logging location 310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 310 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.3.1 Domain access timeout	
8.4.1 Enabling logging.3108.4.2 Setting the logging location.3108.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs.3108.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files.3118.4.5 Example of rolling logs.312	8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh	
8.4.2 Setting the logging location 310 8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 310 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.4 Diagnostics logging	
8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs 310 8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files 311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs 312	8.4.1 Enabling logging	
8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files .311 8.4.5 Example of rolling logs .312	8.4.2 Setting the logging location	
8.4.5 Example of rolling logs	8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs	
	8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files	
9 Integration with external systems	8.4.5 Example of rolling logs	
	9 Integration with external systems	



1 Introduction

MyID Authentication Server is a multi-factor authentication system that provides:

- Token, tokenless, device, and deviceless Multi-Factor Authentication.
- Mobile Push Authentication.
- A NIST 800-63B compliant Password Security Management solution.
- Self-service password reset and unlocking.
- Web Service API and RADIUS interfaces for connectivity.
- Multiple Authentication technologies:
 - Grid Pattern pattern-based authentication.
 - Phrase random character authentication.
 - One Time Code OATH (TOTP) compliant authentication.
 - YubiKey Yubico YubiKey hardware token support.
 - FIDO2 / Passkey authentication.
 - Google / Microsoft Authenticators (OATH compliant).

Note: MyID MFA and MyID PSM were previously known as Authlogics products. Authlogics is now an Intercede Group company and the products have been rebranded accordingly. The term 'Authlogics' may still appear in certain areas of the product.

1.1 Considerations

1.1.1 System requirements

The supported operating systems for MyID Authentication Server are:

• Windows Server 2022

Note: The MyID Reporting Dashboard requires the Microsoft KB5023705 update, or the latest Windows Updates, on Windows Server 2022. This is due to a known OS issue listed by Microsoft as:

This update addresses an issue that affects the Get-WinEvent cmdlet. It fails. The system throws InvalidOperationException

- Windows Server 2019
- Windows Server 2016

Each machine running MyID Authentication Server requires .NET 8.

The hardware requirements for MyID Authentication Server are:

	Minimum	Recommended
CPU	Dual Core 1.2 GHz	Quad Core 2.5 GHz
RAM	4Gb RAM	8Gb RAM
Disk	Single Disk	Dual Disk



1.1.2 Rights and permissions

Local administrator rights are required to perform the installation process of the MyID Authentication Server on a Windows Server.

The Directory Configuration Wizard requires either:

- Enterprise Admin rights, or:
- Domain Admin rights on the following:
 - The domain of which the Authentication server is a member.
 - Each domain containing user accounts that will be used with MyID.

Once the Directory Configuration Wizard is complete, administrators need to be a member of the MyID Administrators group and have local administration rights on the member server.

1.1.3 Password Breach Databases

Intercede has the following versions of its Password Breach Database:

Offline Password Breach Database (Min)

This is the minimum offline database. It is included by default with MyID Authentication Server and contains the top one million breached passwords.

This is infrequently updated.

Offline Password Breach Database (Full)

This is the full offline database. It is a separate download containing over 8 billion breached passwords.

This is infrequently updated.

Cloud Password Breach Database

An Internet hosted database containing over 8 billion breached credentials.

This is regularly updated.

The Offline Password Breach Database can reduce the reliance on Cloud Password Breach lookups.

If a password is not found in the minimum Offline Password Breach Database, then, unless disabled by policy, the MyID Cloud Password Breach Database is also checked.

The full Offline Password Breach Database containing over 8 billion breached passwords is available as a separate add-on download from:

www.intercede.com/support/downloads

When the full database is installed, it may be possible to disable Cloud Password Breach Database lookups.

Note: The MyID Cloud Password Breach Database is regularly updated, but the Offline Password Breach Database is not. Unless a fully offline solution is required, Intercede recommends leaving Cloud Password Breach Database lookups enabled to ensure that the most recent entries are being checked.



1.1.4 High availability

MyID is designed for multiple deployment sizes, topologies, and configurations.

High availability is achieved by ensuring that there are multiple instances of the user database and the authentication server.

To ensure the user database is highly available, there must be multiple Domain Controllers in each domain. Active Directory automatically replicates the domain information to all Domain Controllers in the domain, including MyID data.

To ensure high availability of the MyID Authentication servers, simply install multiple instances on separate servers that are members of the same AD Forest. Each server uses standard Windows mechanisms to locate and work with the most appropriate Domain Controller, or Domain Controllers and Global Catalogs can be manually specified. Each server can be addressed separately as a Primary/Secondary configuration, for example RADIUS1 and RADIUS2, or they can be clustered through the built-in Windows Network Load Balancing and treated as a single entity.

1.1.5 Database backup and restoration

All user metadata is stored in Active Directory and no data is stored on the local server. When you perform a standard Active Directory backup, all MyID data is automatically backed up along with the Active Directory.

You can recover a by reinstalling MyID MFA and PSM from the ground up – the new installation is re-attached to the existing data in the Active Directory and continues functioning as before. Exceptions to this include any custom changes to the web UI and NPS (RADIUS) policy changes.

1.1.6 Developers

For developer-specific information regarding the Web Services Application Programming Interface (REST), see the *MyID Authentication Server Developers Guide*.

1.1.7 Language requirements

The MyID Authentication Server is compatible with multi-lingual versions of Windows Server; however, it is only available in English. Product support and documentation are also available only in English.

Elements of the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) are shown in the language of the server, for example **OK** buttons, however, text specific to MyID is in English only.

1.2 Internet connectivity

The MyID Authentication Server requires Internet Access for certain functions. The majority of required connectivity is outbound to the Internet. All URLs are bound to the authlogics.com DNS domain for easier management.

You may not require all access, depending on your chosen product functionality.



1.2.1 Mobile Push Authentication

When using Mobile Push authentication for MFA, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https://*.ccp.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

*.ccp.authlogics.com on port 443

Note: Devices running the Authlogics Authenticator app also require access to the above URL. While this would normally be available when they are connected to GSM / public networks, they may require explicit access when on corporate Wi-Fi.

1.2.2 Password Breach Database

When using Password Security Management and the MyID Cloud Password Breach Database lookups are enabled, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https://passwordsecurityapi.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

passwordsecurityapi.authlogics.com on port 443

Note: Domain Controller Agents do not require direct access to the Internet as they perform lookups using the Authentication Server. However, there is a GPO setting to enable Internet access as a fallback and, if enabled, Internet access is required.

1.2.3 Licensing

Unless an offline license has been provided, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https:// licencing.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

licencing.authlogics.com **on port** 443

Warning: If access to the licensing URL is not available the license may fail, and the Authentication Server may cease to function.

1.3 Licensing

MyID MFA and PSM solutions are licensed on a per-user basis with each user requiring a license. A license must be installed onto each instance of a MyID Directory. Contact *sales@intercede.com* for any licensing enquiries.

To install a MyID license, run the Licence Configuration Wizard within the MyID Authentication Server Management Console.



1.3.1 License functionality

The functionality available in the MyID Authentication Server depends on the types of license that you have installed. All solution features are broken down into two license types:

- Password Security Management (PSM)
- Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA)

A product key or license is issued for each license type.

Note: For detailed information on the license types please refer to the license agreement document embedded within the installation package.

1.3.2 Evaluation license

MyID is available for trial use for an unlimited number of users with a 30-day time-limit. You can request and instantly install an evaluation license through the Licence Configuration Wizard.

1.3.3 Free license

MyID MFA and PSM solutions are available free of charge for up to ten users with no time limit. You can request and instantly install a free license through the Licence Configuration Wizard.



2 Design and deployment scenarios

The MyID Authentication Server is an enterprise-class solution scaling from stand-alone single instance installations to highly availability multi-master Active Directory-integrated deployments. A single MyID server can support multiple Active Directory Domains in a single forest and the server can be a member of any domain within the forest. User accounts can be Active Directory user accounts or external accounts which do not have an Active Directory user account.

A variety of authentication tokens can be used with the MyID Authentication Server including SMS/Text message, email, offline OTP (pattern or OATH), Mobile Push, biometrics, FIDO2, Passkey, and YubiKey hardware tokens.

The MyID Authentication Server is designed to integrate with a multitude of remote access solutions and applications. The core of MyID is the Authentication Server, which is an IdP Server and also provides REST APIs and a RADIUS interface. MyID also provides agents for various third-party systems to allow for direct integration; for example, Windows Desktop, Remote Desktop Gateway, and Exchange Servers.

Any remote access concentrator or application that can interact with REST Services or RADIUS can communicate with the MyID Authentication Server. Integration guides and sample code are provided for common deployments to assist with the integration into third-party party systems.

The MyID Authentication server is a Federated Identity Provider (IdP) capable of being used as a replacement for ADFS and supports standard protocols of SAML 2.0 and OpenID Connect.

The MyID Authentication Server is a complete NIST 800-63B compliant password policy and management solution for Active Directory. It can ensure that users are not using known breached or shared passwords in real-time, as well as with retrospective checking and automatic remediation.

The MyID Authentication Server Management console uses Microsoft Management Console technology. Administration rights are granted through roles that are typically mapped to Active Directory groups.

For high-availability deployment scenarios with numerous users, user information can be stored across multiple domains in an Active Directory Forest. Multiple MyID servers can be deployed within an Active Directory Forest for multiple points of presence, or in the same location with built-in Network Load Balancing for full High Availability.



2.1 Mobile push authentication

2.1.1 Overview

MyID Mobile Push MFA is designed to work seamlessly when online or offline, and does not rely on Microsoft, Apple, or Google for timely delivery.

If the user is offline, they can enter a short alpha-numeric OTP generated by the same MyID Authenticator app they use when they are online.



MyID MFA Mobile Push MFA Logon Process Flow

2.1.2 Public Push Networks

App notifications through the Microsoft, Apple, and Google Public Push Networks can be unreliable and they are not a guaranteed delivery service. MyID does not rely on Public Push Networks for core functionality; therefore, no authentication data or sensitive information is contained within the Public Push Networks notification.

If the Public Push Networks are functioning as expected, it creates a better user experience, however, if not then the user can still load the Authenticator App themselves and log in as normal.

2.2 Passwordless MFA

2.2.1 Mobile Push

Mobile Push MFA is most commonly deployed as a passwordless authentication solution; however, it can be used in conjunction with a password if required.

This can be connected to applications through RADIUS, Web API, or various agents including for Windows Desktop Agent.

2.2.2 Passwordless for Windows

The MyID Windows Desktop Agent allows users to log on to Windows without having to enter their Windows password. This form of passwordless logon is achieved by storing the Active Directory Password in a secure password vault that is seamlessly delivered to the Windows desktop on the user's behalf when logging on.

Logging on to Windows in this way ensures compatibility with existing Windows applications that rely on Active Directory credentials. Passwordless logon is disabled by default and can be enabled by setting the **Enable Passwordless Logon** group policy option on the Windows Desktop Agent to remove the Active Directory password for logon.



2.2.3 The MyID Server Password Vault

The MyID Authentication Server uses Active Directory as a database. Therefore, all its data is physically stored on the Domain Controllers, including the Server Password Vault. The password vault is disabled by default and must be explicitly enabled before use.

During the MyID Authentication Server installation, a unique certificate is generated with an RSA 2048-bit key pair; this is used to encrypt the password data. This certificate can be replaced at any time by running the Certificate Configuration Wizard on the server, which reencrypts the data with the new certificate key pair. The MyID Password Vault information can only be decrypted if the certificate's private key is available.

2.2.4 The Windows Desktop Agent

The Windows Desktop Agent is designed to run on a Windows desktop or Windows server machine to provide Multi-Factor Authentication security and Passwordless logons. The agent is fully managed and deployable through Active Directory group policy options for easy and granular administration.

The agent can work in an offline scenario if there is no connection available to the MyID Authentication Server.

For more information, see the Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide.



ive Directory as nor

MyID MFA Windows Desktop Password-less logon process First Online Logon





MyID MFA Windows Desktop Password-less logon process Regular Online Logon



2.2.5 The Domain Controller Agent

The Domain Controller Agent is a lightweight service designed to capture password changes made on the Windows Domain, process them against policy to see if they comply, and store them securely in the MyID Server Password Vault. This ensures that all new passwords comply with the latest NIST SP 800-63B guidance.

The Domain Controller Agent also keeps the Active Directory password database and the MyID Server Password Vault synchronized at all times regardless of which mechanism is used to change or reset an Active Directory password. Administrators can use Domain Controller Agent to ensure that passwords used within the environment are unique and to prevent users from sharing passwords internally.





2.3 Active Directory permissions

The following groups are created in the Windows Domain that is selected when you first run the Directory Configuration Wizard. Members of the Enterprise Admins and Domain Admins group *always* have full access to MyID independently of these groups. This behavior cannot be changed due to the Active Directory security model that means that members of these groups always can take ownership of *any* object and change its permissions.

Group name	Туре	Members	Member of	Provides access to
MyID Authentication Server Administrators	Universal Group	The installation user account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full admin access to the MMC and Web Management Portal.
MyID Authentication Server Operators	Universal Group	No members by default.	Not a member of any group.	Limited admin access only through the Web Management Portal.
MyID Authentication Servers	Universal Group	The Authlogics server account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full access to directory info.



If you are upgrading from V4.x Authentication Server deployments, the pre-existing Active Directory groups originally created remain. These Active Directory security groups are:

Group name	Туре	Members	Member of	Provides access to
Authlogics Administrators	Universal Group	The installation user account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full admin access to the MMC and Web Management Portal.
Authlogics Operators	Universal Group	No members by default.	Not a member of any group.	Limited admin access only through the Web Management Portal.
Authlogics Servers	Universal Group	The Authlogics server account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full access to directory info.

Note: The Builtin Administrators group has full administrator access to the Domain Controllers and the Active Directory. Unlike the Domain Admins group, the Builtin Administrators group does not have administrator access to any member servers in the domain, as it is a Domain Local security group.

For information regarding granular application of rights within the Active Directory, contact Intercede customer support.

For further information about Active Directory groups and permissions, see:

docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/identity/ad-ds/plan/security-bestpractices/appendix-b--privileged-accounts-and-groups-in-active-directory

2.4 Integration with MyID CMS

MyID CMS can manage MyID Authentication Server user accounts.

The integration is performed through the MyID WebAPI which must be configured prior to use.

MyID CMS must be configured to connect to the MyID Authentication Server through the MFA Broker. This enables MyID CMS to create MyID Authentication Server users, provision MFA technologies, and change various account settings. For more information about the MFA Broker, contact your Intercede account manager.

The MyID Authentication Server can notify MyID CMS when an event occurs, such as a user completes setting up a new MFA device. To facilitate this configuration of MyID CMS, information is required in the MyID Authentication Server.

Note: MyID CMS version 12.9 or higher is required for integration.



2.4.1 Required information

The following information is required complete the integration:

- The MyID CMS Server URL For example: https://myid/web.oauth2
- The MyID CMS Callback URL For example: https://myid/MFABroker
- The MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate For example:

myid.notifications

- The MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate
 - For example:

myid.notifications.basic

The MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate
For example:

4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d

See section 6, Configuring MyID CMS settings.

2.4.2 High Availability integration

You only need to configure your MyID CMS settings on *one* MyID Authentication Server and the settings are replicated to all the servers in the Active Directory Forest.

The MyID Authentication Server works on a multi-master High Availability model, not Active-Passive, therefore any MyID Authentication Server is able to update user account details. Due to this, all MyID Authentication Servers must be able to access the **MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service** and **MyID CMS MFA Broker Service** URLs.

MyID CMS can be configured to use any MyID Authentication Server for configuration changes. Specifying more than one server, or using a load balanced address, is recommended.



2.5 Deployment checklist

#	Item	Recommended	Check
1	A Physical or Virtual Machine to Operating System.	A Virtual Machine with 4 CPU cores and 8Gb RAM	
2	A Windows Server 2016 or higher OS on which to install MyID Authentication Server.	Windows Server 2019	
3	Internet Connectivity (HTTPS) from MyID Server for licensing and activation.	Allow the destination of: https://*.authlogics.com	
4	An administrative account with rights to install the software and configure the directory service on the Active Directory root domain.	An Enterprise Admin or Domain Admin account	
5	Server downtime authorization to reboot the server post-installation.		
6	Email / SMTP server settings and credentials (if required) to allow the server to send email tokens and provision emails.	Use an Exchange server with integrated authentication.	
7	Plan the DNS name to use in the URL for the Self Service Portal that users use to access their account.	Use: ssp. <mycompany>.com</mycompany>	
8	PSM only: Plan the deployment of the password policy. Must apply to all Domain Controllers and MyID Authentication Servers.	Use the policy defaults where possible.	
9	Plan which MFA technology to provision users for.	Grid Pattern Authentication suits most use cases and is the most secure.	
10	Plan if MFA devices are to be used or only deviceless authentication.	Use MFA where high security or compliance is required, otherwise use deviceless for convenience while improving security over passwords.	
11	Plan which MyID agents to deploy or how to integrate with third-party systems.	Use the industry-standard RADIUS for networking equipment and the WebAPI for application integration.	
12	Plan which applications can use SSO / Federation (for example, SAML 2.0, OpenID Connect, or WS-Fed).	Use MyID IdP services or Microsoft ADFS with the MyID ADFS Agent is still supported.	



3 Multi-Factor Authentication technology

As the usage of Information Technology has increased exponentially, the need for security of these systems has increased proportionately. Traditionally, authentication is solely performed by the user providing a valid username and password. This is known as single-factor authentication as the user *knows* all parts of the authentication process. Passwords have been proven to be unsecure, therefore additional authentication factors are now required.

The increase of security provided by multi-factor (typically two-factor) authentication is that users must now both *have something* and *know something* in the authentication process.

The *something* that they *have* is usually a physical hardware device, like a key fob, that generates a specific unique One Time Pin (OTP). This OTP must also be entered as part of the authentication process.

Although these hardware token devices have improved security significantly, they do have certain limitations and incur a cost overhead in both implementation and on-going maintenance. Furthermore, they typically still need to be used together with a password and therefore do not provide a path towards Passwordless logons.

Intercede provides a multitude of hardware and software-based authentication technologies and delivery mechanisms to suit many scenarios, all while keeping down the logistical overhead of hardware tokens down.

3.1 Mobile Push authentication technology

MyID Mobile Push is designed to simply send a notification to a user's phone to authenticate.



Once the notification is tapped, the MyID Authenticator app loads and the user may be required to authenticate with biometrics. The MyID Authenticator app was previously known as the Authlogics Authenticator app.



The user is presented with information about the logon and can choose to **Allow** or **Deny** the request.



If the user taps **Allow**, then the application they are trying to access completes its logon process.

However, if the user taps **Deny**, they are asked why. The answer is recorded on the MyID Authentication Server. If they stated they did not make this logon request, the server tracks future logon attempts and automatically throttles sending new Push requests to prevent MFA fatigue.

MyID Mobile Push helps to mitigate typical Push vulnerabilities:

- MFA fatigue protection:
 - Requires an initial offline logon for untrusted browser connections.
 - Dynamic throttling for legacy (for example, RADIUS) / non-browser channels when a **Denied** logon is recorded by the user.
- Does not send any OTP or secret information through Apple or Google servers, so it therefore cannot be tampered with in transit.
- The Authlogics App responds to a logon request when open, even if a network Push is not received through Apple or Google, to prevent denial of service attacks or network delays.



3.2 Grid Pattern technology

Grid Pattern authentication technology (formerly known as PINgrid) mitigates the security limitations of the traditional OTP tokens by generating a One Time Code derived from a grid of numbers. These grids are specific to each user and change every minute, reflecting different numbers. The additional security of Grid Pattern is that the user *also* needs to *know* a unique pattern to extrapolate an OTP.

To protect against automated brute force attacks, MyID MFA includes **Account Lockout** functionality, where a user's account is locked out either indefinitely or for a pre-configured period when a passcode is entered incorrectly several times. Grid Pattern authentication mitigates even the threats of keylogging, screen scraping and shoulder surfing attacks.

Grid Pattern authentication is available in one, two, and three-factor authentication methodologies. Grids can be views within an app, on a web page, sent via TEXT/SMS or email, or used offline through the MyID Authenticator app in the App Store.

3.2.1 How it works – example

User pattern:

		3rd			6th
	2nd			5th	
1st			4th		

Pattern on a challenge grid:

2	4	3	1	2	5
2	3	0	1	2	0
1	3	4	1	4	0
1	0	3	5	5	4
2	4	0	2	4	3
5	5	0	1	5	3



One Time Code:

133125

In a 'Prove it!' situation the pattern is used with a challenge grid:

- A One Time Password (OTP) is hidden in the grid.
- Only the person who knows the secret pattern can find the OTP.

Grid Pattern authentication technology is a true One Time Pin authentication solution, as all valid passcodes entered can be used only once, even if the second authentication attempt occurs within the same period from the same device.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.

3.3 Phrase authentication technology

Phrase authentication (formerly known as PINphrase) uses some authentication methods that have become a de facto standard in the banking industry to provide a simple to use but efficient and cost-effective authentication solution.

Phrase authentication is based on a passphrase question and answer system that prompts the user to enter random characters from the answer to a randomly chosen question.

Unlike passwords, the answers to the questions are typically things that the user is unlikely to forget, which reduces helpdesk calls, limits resets, and further cuts costs. Since the user is only ever entering part of the answer, for example letters two, five and second last character, during each login the user is asked to enter different letters, and from different answers, making the response a One Time Code.

The full answer is not revealed during the login, which makes Phrase authentication ideal for both deviceless and Multi-Factor Authentication. Phrase authentication can also be configured to randomly select letters from different questions to further enhance security.

An administrator can configure multiple common questions for things that users generally know an answer for and can then specify how many of the questions a user must provide an answer for. For example, an administrator may set a scenario where the user must provide answers for at least four of the ten supplied questions.

By default, a user is assigned a Codeword – a randomly chosen dictionary word which can be used for first login.

For example, a new user called Bob Jones is enabled and his mobile phone details are recorded. He provides answers to at least six questions from a pool. He chooses the following:

Question	Answer
Place of birth?	Seattle
Pet's name?	Tigger
Memorable place?	Springfield
Mother's maiden name?	Watson
Memorable date and time (YYYYMMDDHHMM)	201101021937
First school?	Winchester



3.3.1 Authentication scenario #1 – deviceless authentication

Bob wants to log on to an Internet banking site. He goes to the website and types in his username. He is then presented with a question from the answered pool. He is asked to enter specific characters from the answer.

Please provide the first, third, fourth and the last characters from your memorable place.

To authenticate, Bob enters: S R I D.

3.3.2 Authentication scenario #2 – multi-factor authentication

This requires a physical device that Bob receives the question and random positions (the soft token) on. Typically, this device is a mobile phone, as the mobile phone number is unique to the user.

Bob wants to log on to an Internet banking site. He goes to the website and types in his username. Once Bob enters his username, the Phrase authentication server detects that the logon process for Bob has started. A challenge is generated and sent as an SMS/Text message to Bob's mobile device as follows:

Phrase: Please provide the second, third, fifth, and penultimate characters from your place of birth.

To authenticate, Bob enters: A L S R.

A key part of MyID Phrase authentication is that both the deviceless and Multi-Factor methods have an identical look and feel to the user. The only difference is where the challenge message is displayed.

In cases where mobile phone reception cannot be guaranteed and instant message retrieval may not always be possible, Phrase authentication can pre-send tokens. Pre-sending tokens ensure that the user always has a token on their device prior to the authentication attempt. As soon as the token is used, the next token is sent to the user's mobile device ready to be used for the next login.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.



3.4 One Time Code technology

MyID One Time Code (formerly known as PINpass) is an OATH RFC compliant two-factor authentication solution which utilizes soft tokens to reduce the costs associated with hardware key fobs. One Time Code OTPs are delivered to mobile phones using SMS text messages or as an email for even more flexibility and cost savings.

One Time Codes give administrators the ability to pre-send one or more OTPs so that the user always has an OTP on their mobile device before logging on. As soon as the last OTP is used, then a new set of OTPs are sent to the user ready for future logon attempts. Alternatively, a One Time Code can be used offline from the MyID Authenticator app in the App Store.

To increase security and convenience, administrators can configure users to provide an Active Directory password or static PIN with the One Time Pin. A static pin can be entered, before, after, or even in the middle of the OTP code making it more difficult for a key logger to differentiate between the OTC code and the user's static PIN.

When a user is configured with a real-time token and attempts to login, they enter their unique login name and One Time Code sends a six-to-eight-digit OTP to their mobile phone using SMS or an email address. The user then enters the OTC along with either their AD password or a static PIN, depending on the configuration.

The login process is similar for a user who is configured with a pre-send token, except that a code is not sent to the user after they enter their username as they already have a code on their phone. Instead, a new code is only sent after they login for use during the next login.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.

3.5 Standard OATH TOTP

MyID MFA supports standard software OATH time-based one-time passwords (TOTPs) through tokens such as the Microsoft and Google Authenticator apps. With this, users are no longer required to download the MyID Authenticator app (previously known as the Authlogics Authenticator app) and can add MyID MFA to their Microsoft and Google Authenticator app profile.

As with the MyID OTC solution, standard OATH authenticators use soft tokens to reduce the costs associated with hardware key fobs. One Time Code OTPs are generated on the mobile phones out-of-band without the need for the mobile device to have signal or sufficient data.

As with other MyID MFA technologies, Standard OATH support extends to offline logins for our MyID Authentication agents.

3.6 YubiKey OTP

If hardware tokens are required, MyID supports YubiKey OTP tokens from Yubico. YubiKey OTP tokens are USB devices that do not have a battery, do not expire, and work with any OS.

To increase security and convenience, administrators can configure users to provide an Active Directory password or static PIN with the YubiKey OTP token. A static pin can be entered, before generating the YubiKey OTP code to ensure that the multi-factor requirements are satisfied as there is something they *have* (the YubiKey token) and something they *know* (the static PIN).



3.7 FIDO Passkeys for the Enterprise

Passkeys are based on the FIDO standard and enable cryptography-based phishingresistant authentication. By combining high security with a passwordless user experience, Passkeys are revolutionizing the consumer authentication experience.

However, it is difficult for enterprises to gain the benefits Passkey-based authentication brings, as by design they do not enable the level of management and integration enterprises require.

By bringing enterprise managed FIDO passkeys into the MyID MFA product, organizations can now easily FIDO-enable multiple applications and deploy passkeys to end users, enhancing security and improving the user experience.

MyID MFA acts as both a FIDO authentication server and a passkey issuance solution. End users authenticate to MyID MFA with their passkey, and by support for standard federated identity protocols, MyID MFA provides authentication services to multiple applications including cloud, on-premise, and Windows desktop logon.

Note: The FIDO Credential Provider does not work over RDP; the device is not passed through. If you plug a FIDO token in on the client, the token does not show up in the RDP session. FIDO token Web Sign-On and browser authentication over RDP work on Windows Server 2022 but not on Windows Server 2019.

There are multiple types of Passkeys supported by MyID MFA, enabling customers to choose the best balance of security and costs that fits their particular needs:

Synchronizable Passkeys

Synchronizable Passkeys use an existing mobile phone to protect the private key used in the authentication process.

Able to communicate over the FIDO protocol built into multiple devices and web browsers, the phone simply acts as the user's security token and the user accesses the protected private key using fingerprint, face ID or a PIN, delivering secure, passwordless authentication with a simple user experience.

Synch-able passkeys can be backed up and restored using the mobile operating system's built in mechanisms, for example iCloud. This effectively deals with lost or replacement devices without having to reissue credentials.

Device Bound Passkeys

Device Bound Passkeys are useful for organizations that want higher levels of security and control over where passkeys are. MyID MFA also supports device-bound passkeys such as those stored on a USB authenticator, for example YubiKey. Device-bound passkeys never leave the device, resulting in the highest levels of phishing resistance.

MyID MFA supports the innovative YubiKey Bio device, which enables users to replace a PIN with a simple match of a fingerprint, delivering a seamless authentication experience while maintaining the highest level of security.



3.7.1 Windows Managed Password for FIDO credentials

You can allow MyID MFA to create a random, 32-byte token as the user's Windows password.

You can use this token to log in to or unlock your desktop, as well as during permission request events in Windows. This allows for a fully passwordless Windows experience.

The token is securely encrypted using a symmetric key derived using the FIDO HMAC secret. MyID MFA then secures and associates the Windows password token with a FIDO devicebound passkey. The Windows password therefore can be recovered only when a successful FIDO authentication takes place.

When a user authenticates with a different FIDO authentication device, a new Windows password token is created for that device.

For information on implementing this feature, see section 5.2.16, FIDO2 tab.

3.7.1.1 Known issues

 IKB-440 - Offline logon caches only the last successful FIDO authentication method

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, you can use only the last successful FIDO authentication method. If a user logs in with biometric FIDO before going offline, only biometric works offline, and similarly for non-biometric logon. Even if the user has previously logged in with both devices, only the most recent one is cached when working offline. This affects physical FIDO authentication devices only.

IKB-441 – Unable to carry out an offline logon after using a temporary access code

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, if you use a temporary access code before going offline, all cached credentials are cleared, preventing you from carrying out an offline logon with either biometric or non-biometric FIDO devices, even if you have successfully logged in with FIDO devices before.

3.8 Authentication Technology against Factor type

Technology	Knowledge	Possession	Inherent
Password (NIST)	Х		
Grid Authentication	Х	Х	Х
Phrase Authentication	Х	Х	
One Time Code	Х	Х	Х
Push		Х	Х
Standard OATH		Х	
YubiKey OTP	Х	Х	
Passkey/FIDO2		Х	Х



3.9 Automatic MFA determination and SSO assurance levels

MyID MFA allows for users to be provisioned for multiple MFA technologies at once. Applications Logon Technology can be set to **Automatic** MFA; this determines the most appropriate technology that the user is capable of authenticating with.

Coupled to this, MyID MFA also provides Single Sign On (SSO) capabilities across applications. This means that a user can authenticate to one application and is then not required to re-authenticate to other applications.

As each application can be configured with its own MFA assurance level, users can authenticate to an application with a lower-level assurance level than another application.

MyID MFA provides conditional SSO where SSO is allowed, provided that the application being accessed has the same or lower assurance level than the application a user originally authenticated to, the user is not required to re-authenticate. If an application has a higher-level of assurance than the original authenticated to, then the user needs to re-authenticate to the application with the higher-level assurance MFA technology.

3.9.1 Hierarchy

This is the MyID MFA automatic logon technology and assurance levels hierarchy:

- 1. FIDO / Passkey
- 2. Grid Multi-Factor Authentication
- 3. Push
- 4. YubiKey One Time PIN
- 5. One Time Code
- 6. Phrase Multi-Factor Authentication
- 7. Grid Deviceless
- 8. Phrase Deviceless
- 9. AD Password (Not applicable to Realm users)



3.10 Federation server

Federation provides the ability to share identity and authentication information between systems in a managed way. By supporting standards-based protocols such as OpenID Connect and SAML, MyID MFA can easily add stronger authentication to a range of applications be they cloud based or on-premises.

By supporting the widest range of authentication options from OTP over SMS, through pass phrases, OTP generation using the MyID Authenticator app, push-notifications, and FIDO passkeys, you can introduce a single means of strong authentication to project multiple applications or mix and match technologies as best fits your security needs and deployment scenario.

Building Identity Provider capabilities into the MFA solution, not only supports federation, but also delivers a unified authentication experience across the entire application suite, including authentication to application, logging on to the windows desktop, accessing the self-service portal and resetting credentials such as passwords. A simplified and consistent authentication process improves the user experiences and reduces the likelihood of a call to the help desk.

3.10.1 ADFS replacement

Microsoft ADFS (Active Directory Federation Services) has been the mainstay of many organizations looking to add secure authentication to multiple applications in a Microsoft-centric environment. With the move to Microsoft Entra based solutions, a number of organizations are finding themselves looking for an alternative that is simpler to deploy and provides support for both cloud and legacy on-premises applications, as well as securing the Windows Desktop logon and Microsoft 365.

The federated Identity Provider (IdP) capabilities MyID MFA delivers provides a modern and easy to alternative to ADFS. By supporting a wide range of authenticators, including FIDO passkeys, and standard protocols such as OpenID Connect and SAML 2.0, MyID MFA is a natural successor to ADFS.



4 Deployment

The following deployment overview walks through the installation process for deploying a MyID Authentication Server.

To deploy a MyID Authentication Server fully, you must:

- 1. Install the MyID Authentication Server on a Windows Server.
- 2. Provision users in the MyID Directory.
- Install the Plug-ins, configure the third-party integrations, or setup RADIUS clients. MyID plug-ins have separate Integration guides which should be followed.
- 4. Create applications for Federated App support.
- 5. Optionally, you may choose to deploy additional MyID Authentication Servers to provide High Availability.



4.1 High Availability and certificates

The MyID Authentication Server installer automatically generates a MyID Server Certificate – this is used for encrypting data sorted in the directory. In addition, the installer creates a MyID SSL Certificate that is used by IIS for encrypting web traffic in transit.

Before you install an additional MyID Authentication Server, you must export the MyID Server Certificate from the primary MyID Authentication Server with its private key and import it onto the additional server. Until you do this, the additional Authentication Server cannot access encrypted data stored in the directory.



To verify which certificate is being used on an existing Authentication Server, check the **Certificates** tab of the MyID PSM & MFA Properties dialog in the MyID Management Console:

MyID PSM & MFA Properties				
Grid Options Phrase General RADIUS	Alerts Remedia			
FIDO2 MyID CMS	Certificates SM	TP Delivery SMS	Delivery Licence	
Authentication Server Certificate				
Friendly Name:	Authlogics Server	Cert		
Subject Name:	CN=*.federationde	mo.com		
Thumbprint:	DE14AB8EAFD27	06D04F0344E0A	B4C1E4FD5B5	
Expiry Date:	3/5/2034 2:34:50	РМ		
Private Key:	Yes			
Certificate Information Change				
Client Trusted Root Certificate				
Friendly Name:				
Expiry Date:				
Certificate Inform	nation		Browse	
	ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply	

To verify which Identity Provider Signing certificates are being used, check the **Signing Certificates** tab of the Applications Properties dialog in the MyID Management Console.

Applications Properties			
Identity Provider Signing Certificates SAML 2.0			
Primary IdP Signing Certificate			
Friendly Name: Authlogics IdP Signing Cert (CN=*.authlogicsdemo.) Expiry Date: 07/02/2035 11:06:26			
Certificate Information Browse			
Secondary IdP Signing Certificate Friendly Name: Expiry Date:			
Certificate Information Remove Browse			
Certificate Management Swap the Primary and Secondary Certificates. Swap			
OK Cancel Apply			





For information on exporting and importing certificates, see section 4.7, Certificate export and import.


4.2 Installing the MyID Authentication Server

The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests and other core activities. The MyID Authentication Server should be set up before any other MyID MFA or PSM component.

Note: This section of the installation process requires Local Administrator rights on the server. Domain rights are not required at this stage.

- 1. To start the MyID Authentication Server installation, run the MyID Authentication Server xxxxx.exe installer.
- 2. Click Next to automatically uninstall the previous version.

MyID Authentication Service	ver - InstallAware Wizard — 🗌 🗙
	Welcome to the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server
MyiD	The Installation Wizard will install MyID Authentication Server on your computer.
	WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
	To continue, dick Next.
	< Back Next > Cancel



4. Review the license agreement and check the **I accept the terms of the licence agreement** box.

🧿 MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	_		\times
Licence Agreement Please carefully read the following licence agreement.			lyiD
			^
Important			
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT			
THE USE OF ALL INTERCEDE SOFTWARE PROVIDED VIA AUTHLO TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (THE AGREEMENT).	DGICS	IS SUBJE	ст
PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLI DOWNLOADING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWA			
If you are viewing this agreement in connection with a downloa	d onli	no or on a	~
✓ I accept the terms of the licence agreement			
Intercede			
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ex	t >	Can	cel

🧿 MyID Authentica	tion Server - InstallAware Wizard —		×
Setup Type Choose the set	up type that is best for your needs.	M	yiD
Please select a	setup type.		
○ <u>C</u> omplete	All program features will be installed. This option requires the most disk space.		
⊖ C <u>o</u> mpact	Program will be installed with minimum required features. This may disable some application functionality.		
€ Cu <u>s</u> tom	Choose which program features you want installed. Recommended for advanced users.		
Intercede	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Canc	el



6. Select the **Custom** setup type, and click **Next**.

🧿 MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	– 🗆 X
Custom Setup Choose the program features you would like to install.	MyiD
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is inst Authentication Server Reporting Dashboard Offline Password Breach Database (Top 1 Milli	talled. Feature Description The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests, password changes and other core activities.
<	Required: 215,713 KB Remaining: 151,347 MB
Intercede	Next > Cancel

7. Select features to install.

At minimum, select the **Authentication Server core** and the **Authentication Server Management Console** features for installation.

MyID Authentication Serve	er - InstallAware Wizard	_		×
	Completing the Installation N Authentication Server	Wizard	for MyI	D
MyiD	The Installation Wizard is now ready to Authentication Server on this compute - Click Next to begin configura - Click Back to change settings - Click Cancel to exit	er.	e MyID	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> e	xt >	Can	cel



9. Click Next.

The installation is being performed.

🧿 MylD Autł	hentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	_		×
-	MyID Authentication Server gram features you selected are being configured.			lyiD
Q	Please wait while the Installation Wizard installs MyID Auth Server. This may take several minutes.	enticati	on	
	Status: 2CF.bin, 34% complete			
Intercede —	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	>	Cano	cel

10. You may be prompted to overwrite the existing NPS policy.

MyID Au	MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard					
1	RADIUS Server					
	The Windows Network Policy Server is already installed on this server. Do you wish to BACKUP and OVERWRITE the existing policy configuration with the default MyID Authentication Server policy?					
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o					





Click Yes.

MyID Authentication Server	- InstallAware Wizard - 🗆 🗙		
Completing the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server			
MyiD	You have successfully completed the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server.		
	<u> <u> </u><u> </u><u> R</u>un the Directory Configuration Wizard now </u>		
	To close this wizard, click Finish.		
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel		

All necessary MyID Authentication Server files have been installed on your server.

- 11. If you want to set up your directory immediately, select **Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now**.
- 12. Click Finish.

4.3 Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server

If you no longer require the MyID Authentication Server on a server, you can remove it by performing an uninstall from **Control Panel > Programs > Programs and Features**:

0	Programs and Features - X								
~								9	
	Control Panel Home	Uninstall or change a program							
	View installed updates	To uninstall a program, select it from the list and then	click Uninstall, Change, or Repair.						
	Turn Windows features on or off	\frown							
		Organize Uninstall Change					8== -	•	
	Install a program from the network	Name	Publisher	 Installed On 	Size	Version		^	
		Microsoft Lync Server 2013, Bootstrapper Prerequisite	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	188 MB	5.0.8308.0			
		Microsoft Server Speech Platform Runtime (x64)	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	6.69 MB	11.0.7400.345			
		Microsoft Server Speech Recognition Language - TEL	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	29.5 MB	11.0.7400.345			
		I Microsoft Server Speech Text to Speech Voice (en-US,	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	22.3 MB	11.0.7400.345			
		Microsoft Speech Platform VXML Runtime (x64)	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	1.34 MB	11.0.7400.345			
		Microsoft Unified Communications Managed API 4.0	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	88.0 KB	5.0.8308.0			
		Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 x64 Redistributable - 10.0	Microsoft Corporation	03/03/2022	13.8 MB	10.0.40219			
		Hicrosoft Visual C++ 2012 Redistributable (x64) - 11.0	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	20.4 MB	11.0.50727.1			
		劇 Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 Redistributable (x64) - 12.0	Microsoft Corporation	02/01/2020	20.5 MB	12.0.30501.0			
		劇 Microsoft Visual C++ 2015-2022 Redistributable (x64)	Microsoft Corporation	18/01/2024	20.6 MB	14.36.32532.0			
		劇 Microsoft Visual C++ 2015-2022 Redistributable (x86)	Microsoft Corporation	24/11/2023	17.6 MB	14.32.31326.0			
		🔀 Microsoft Visual Studio Code (User)	Microsoft Corporation	16/01/2024	343 MB	1.80.1			
		劇 Microsoft Windows Desktop Runtime - 6.0.25 (x64)	Microsoft Corporation	18/01/2024	210 MB	6.0.25.33020			
		📇 MyDefrag v4.3.1	J.C. Kessels	02/01/2020	4.77 MB	4.0.0.0			
		O MyID Authentication Server	Intercede	18/01/2024		5.0.1000.0			
		Postman x86_64 10.20.0	Postman	28/11/2023	123 MB	10.20.0			
		VMware Tools	VMware, Inc.	24/11/2023	96.7 MB	12.1.5.20735119		~	
		Intercede Product version: 5.0.1000.0 Help link: https://support		tps://www.interce opyright © 2007-20		ll rights reserved.			



4.3.1 Active Directory metadata

Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server does *not* remove the metadata from user accounts in the Active Directory. If you want to remove MyID MFA and PSM from your environment completely, delete all user accounts using the MMC before uninstalling. This does *not* delete the user accounts in the Active Directory; it just removes all MyID information from them.

For detailed information about MyID Active Directory metadata, see Authlogics KB207256965:

support.authlogics.com/hc/en-us/articles/207256965

4.4 Updates and upgrades

A product update is a minor new version designed to fix specific known issues in the product and introduce some new features. Updates are typically low risk to deploy and are designed to be a simple in-place update. Updates are released regularly and may be skipped if the changes in the update are not required. Check the readme.txt of the update to see the changelog.

Typically, updates can be performed in-place at your convenience allowing for differing versions for MyID Agents and Authentication servers operational within your environment.

For example, if you currently have V5.0.6947.0 deployed, an in-place update of all agents and servers to V5.0.6947.2 can be done sporadically in any order that fits your schedule.

Note: When updating or upgrading servers, you are recommended to perform the action one server at a time to update or upgrade additional servers only once the server you are currently performing update or upgrade action on is completed and fully tested to be operational.

A product upgrade is a major new version that includes fixes but is mainly designed to deliver new features and functionality. Upgrades are not released regularly. Upgrades may require additional planning before they are installed. For more information, see section *4.6*, *Installing an upgrade*. Always review the installation and configuration guide of the new version before upgrading.



4.5 Installing an update

You can use the installation program of an update for a full clean install, or to perform an inplace update of an existing installation.

The installation process is almost identical to performing a new installation. Once installed, you must run the Directory Configuration Wizard for the server to be used after the update.

For PSM deployments, you must rerun the Password Security Management wizard after an upgrade.

All directory settings, registry settings, and supported web portal customizations are retained during an update.

Note: If the latest version of MyID MFA and PSM is an upgrade to your current version, see section *4.5*, *Installing an update*.

To perform an in-place update:

1. To start the MyID Authentication Server installation, run the MyID Authentication Server xxxxx.exe installer.

🧿 MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard —	· 🗆 🗙
Application Requirements The following requirements must be processed before starting setup.	MyiD
Previous Version Uninstallation	
To continue, dick Next.	
Intercede 	Cancel





2. Click **Next** to automatically uninstall the previous version.



- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Review the license agreement and check the **I accept the terms of the licence agreement** box.

MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard -	_		Х
Licence Agreement Please carefully read the following licence agreement.		My	/iD
			^
Important			
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT			
THE USE OF ALL INTERCEDE SOFTWARE PROVIDED VIA AUTHLOGI TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (THE AGREEMENT).	CSIS	SUBJEC	r
PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE.			
If you are viewing this agreement in connection with a download of	nlino	05 00 9	¥
$\begin{tabular}{ll} \hline \end{tabular}$ I accept the terms of the licence agreement			
Intercede			
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >		Cance	1



5. Click Next.

0	MyID Authenticat	tion Server - InstallAware Wizard —		Х
	Setup Type Choose the setu	p type that is best for your needs.	My	/iD
	Please select a	setup type.		
	() <u>C</u> omplete	All program features will be installed. This option requires the most disk space.		
	⊖ C <u>o</u> mpact	Program will be installed with minimum required features. This may disable some application functionality.		
) Cu <u>s</u> tom	Choose which program features you want installed. Recommended for advanced users.		
Inte	rcede	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cance	ł

6. Select the **Custom** setup type, and click **Next**.

MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	– 🗆 X
Custom Setup Choose the program features you would like to install.	MyiD
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is inst Authentication Server Reporting Dashboard Offline Password Breach Database (Top 1 Milli	talled. Feature Description The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests, password changes and other core activities.
	Required: 215,713 KB Remaining: 151,347 MB
Intercede	Next > Cancel

7. Select features to install.

At minimum, select the **Authentication Server core** and the **Authentication Server Management Console** features for installation.



8. Click Next.



9. Click Next.

The installation is being performed.

🧿 MyID Authe	entication Server - InstallAware Wizard —	×
-	MyID Authentication Server am features you selected are being configured.	MyiD
Q	Please wait while the Installation Wizard installs MyID Authentication Server. This may take several minutes.	
	Status: 2CF.bin, 34% complete	
Intercede		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel





10. You are prompted to overwrite the existing NPS policy.



Click No to preserve your preexisting Network Policy Server policy configurations.

MyID Authentication Serv	ver - InstallAware Wizard —	×
	Completing the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server	
MyiD	You have successfully completed the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server.	
	Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now	
	To close this wizard, click Finish.	
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel	

All necessary MyID Authentication Server files have been installed on your server.

- 11. If you want to set up your directory immediately, select **Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now**.
- 12. Click Finish.

4.6 Installing an upgrade

To perform an Upgrade successfully (for example upgrading V4.1.xxxx.x deployments to V4.2.xxxx.x or V4.2.xxxx.x to V5.0.xxxx.x) without potentially impacting your environment, you must follow a step-by step process.

All MyID agents are designed to be backward compatible – a V5.x agent can communicate with a V4.2 Authentication Server; however, a V4.2 agent cannot communicate with a V5.0 Authentication server. Therefore, before you upgrade Authentication Servers, you must first upgrade the deployed agents.

Agents may have new Group Policy objects so, before deploying the new agent, you may need to push the Group Policy objects accordingly.



Once you have fully upgraded the agents, you can upgrade the Authentication servers.

Fully test each step of the recommended upgrade process before moving on to the next step. The recommended upgrade process is:

- 1. Push any new MyID MFA and PSM agent Group Policy Objects (GPO) to the servers and workstations where the agents are installed.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Windows Desktop Agent, see the *Configuring the Windows Desktop Agent* section of the *Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide*.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Domain Controller Agent, see the Configuring the Domain Controller Agent Policy settings section of the Domain Controller Agent Integration Guide.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the ADFS Agent, see the Configuring the MyID ADFS Agent section of the ADFS Agent Integration Guide.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Exchange Agent, see the *Configuring the Exchange Agent* section of the *Exchange Agent Integration Guide*.
- 2. Upgrade all MyID PSM and MFA agents.
 - For information on upgrading the Windows Desktop Agent, see the Updating the MyID Windows Desktop Agent section of the Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide.
 - For information on upgrading the Domain Controller Agent, see the Updating the MyID Domain Controller Agent section of the **Domain Controller Agent Integration Guide**.
 - For information on upgrading the ADFS Agent, see the *Updating the MyID ADFS Agent* section of the *ADFS Agent Integration Guide*.
 - For information on upgrading the Exchange Agent, see the *Updating the MyID Exchange Agent* section of the *Exchange Agent Integration Guide*.

Ensure that the agents are all reading the GPOs that you configured and that they can communicate with the existing Authentication Servers.

3. Manually uninstall all but one Authentication Server.

You must ensure that you have only *one* Authentication Server remaining in your Active Directory forest.

4. Perform an in-place upgrade on the last remaining Authentication Server.

Ensure that the Internet Information Server Port bindings are the same as before, and that any NPS clients are not overwritten.

Performing an in-place upgrade of one Authentication Server has the same steps as performing an in-place update of one Authentication Server; see section *4.5*, *Installing an update*.

- 5. After performing the in-place upgrade:
 - a. Run the Directory Configuration wizard with **Reprocess user data to latest storage version** enabled.

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide



- b. Reboot.
- c. If you are performing a PSM upgrade, run the Password Security Management wizard.
- d. Use the on-server Self Service Portal to test the upgraded server. You are recommended to:
 - Test that you can log in with pre-existing MFA users.
 - Test that passwords that are valid according to PSM defined policies are accepted.
 - Test that passwords that are invalid according to PSM defined policies are rejected.
- 6. Install the latest Authentication Server version on the Authentication servers that you uninstalled.

Before installing additional MyID Authentication servers, see section 4.7, Certificate export and import.

After installing each in-place upgrade, carry out the previous step (performing the inplace upgrade) on each machine.

7. Review the MyID Authentication Server settings.

Note the new features, and browse the documentation for more information on them.

4.6.1 Upgrading from version 4.2

The MyID Authentication Server 5.0 supports upgrading from version 4.0 and higher. To upgrade from version 3.x, you must first upgrade to version 4.1 (not version 4.2), and then to version 5.0; there is no direct upgrade path.

Important: If the Authlogics Desktop Logon Agent version 4.x is deployed, you *must* upgrade the Windows Desktop Agent to version 5.0 *before* you upgrade the MyID Authentication Server . The Windows Desktop Agent 5.0 is backward compatible with version 4.x Authentication servers. See the *Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide* for further details.

4.6.2 Windows Desktop Agent compatibility

All Windows Desktop Agents are designed to be backward compatible; the latest version of the Desktop Agent works with the previous MyID Authentication Server version. However, the agent may not work with more recent MyID Authentication Server versions.

The following table details the MyID Authentication Server relative to the versions of Windows Desktop Agent supported:

MyID Authentication Server version	Minimum Desktop Agent version
5.0.6946.0 and lower	5.0.6946.0
5.0.6947.0	5.0.6947.0

When a Windows Desktop Agent falls out of compatibility, the agent can no longer communicate with the Authentication Server and therefore continues to operate in offline mode.



4.7 Certificate export and import

This section details the process of exporting the MyID Authentication Server directory encryption and Identity Provider certificates to a file so it can be imported onto another server where the MyID Authentication Server software will be installed.

4.7.1 Exporting a certificate from an existing MyID Authentication Server

Note: The following documents the process to export the directory encryption certificate; this process must be repeated for the IdP Signing certificate.

1. To start the Certificate MMC, run certlm.msc.

🖀 certlm - [Certificates - Local Con	nputer\Personal\Certificates]				-		×
<u>File Action View H</u> elp							
🗢 🔿 🖄 📰 🔏 🖦 🗙 🛛							
Certificates - Local Computer Certificates Certificates Trusted Root Certification Au Certificates Intermediate Certification Au Circuit Au Ci	GMicrosoft Exchange Server Aut server WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	Issued By *.authlogicsdemo.com *.authlogicsdemo.com Microsoft Exchange Server Auth C server WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	Expiration Date 26/11/2025 26/11/2025 06/12/2024 02/01/2025 30/12/2029	Intended Purposes Server Authenticati Server Authenticati Server Authenticati Server Authenticati	Friendly Name Authlogics Server Cert Authlogics SSL Cert Microsoft Exchange Serve Microsoft Exchange WMSVC-SHA2	r Auth Cer	tificate
Third-Party Root Certification Truted People Client Authentication Issuers Client Authentication Issuers Client Authentication Issuers Client Authenticate Roots Client Certificate Enrollment Reque Smart Card Truted Roots Truted Devices Web Hosting Windows Live ID Token Issuer							
< >	<						>
Personal store contains 5 certificates.							



2. Right-click the MyID Server Certificate (or IdP Signing Certificate) being used, and select All Tasks > Export.

			Expiration Date	Intended Pur	poses	Friendly Name
.authlogicsdemo.com	*.authlogicsden	no.com	26/11/2025	Server Authe	nticati	Authlogics Server Cert
authlogicsdemo.com	Open	om	26/11/2025	Server Authe	nticati	Authlogics SSL Cert
Microsoft Exchange Server A	All Tasks	>	Open		ticati	Microsoft Exchange Se
server	Cut		Request Certificate with New		ticati	Microsoft Exchange WMSVC-SHA2
WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER					ticati	WWSVC-SHA2
	Сору		Renew Certificate with New	Key		
	Delete		Manage Private Keys			
	Properties		Advanced Operations	>		
	Help		Export			
Certificate Export V Welcome to		ate E	xport Wizard			
lists from a certifica A certificate, which and contains inform	ate store to your di is issued by a cert nation used to prot tificate store is the	sk. ification ect data	icate trust lists and certifica a authority, is a confirmation a or to establish secure net area where certificates are	n of your identii work	ty	



(-	🛃 Certificate Export Wizard	×
	Export Private Key You can choose to export the private key with the certificate.	
	Private keys are password protected. If you want to export the private key with the certificate, you must type a password on a later page.	
	Do you want to export the private key with the certificate?	
	• Yes, export the private key	
	\bigcirc No, do not export the private key	
	<u>N</u> ext Cance	el



4. Select Yes, export the private key and click Next.

Export File Format Certificates can be exported in a variety of file formats.	
Select the format you want to use:	
◯ <u>D</u> ER encoded binary X.509 (.CER)	
Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)	
○ Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard - PKCS #7 Certificates (.P7B)	
Include all certificates in the certification path if possible	
Personal Information Exchange - PKCS #12 (.PFX)	
\checkmark Include all certificates in the certification path if possible	
\Box Delete the private <u>k</u> ey if the export is successful	
Export all extended properties	
Enable certificate privacy	
Microsoft Serialized Certificate Store (.SST)	





6. Select **Password** and enter your password twice to confirm.

				×
← 🛛 & Certificate Export	Wizard			
Security To maintain secu using a passwor	irity, you must protect the d.	e private key	y to a security principal or	by
Group or use	r names (recommended)			
			Add	
			<u>R</u> emove	
Password:]	
<u>C</u> onfirm pass	word:		1	
••••••				
Encryption: Tri	pleDES-SHA1 V			
			<u>N</u> ext	Cancel





8. Enter allocation and **File name** to export to.

		\times
←	😓 Certificate Export Wizard	
	۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰۰	
	File to Export	
	Specify the name of the file you want to export	
		-
	Eile name:	
	C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert Export.pfx Browse	
		_
	<u>N</u> ext Cancel	



9. Click Next.

~	5	Certificate Export Wizard		×
		Completing the Certificate Exp	port Wizard	
		You have successfully completed the Certificate	Export wizard.	
		You have specified the following settings:		
		File Name	C: \Users \Administrator \Desktop \Authle	
		Export Keys	Yes	
		Include all certificates in the certification path	Yes	
		File Format	Personal Information Exchange (*.pfx)	
		<	>	
			<u>F</u> inish Canc	el

10. Click Finish.



11. Click OK.

The wizard closes.



4.7.2 Import a certificate to a new MyID Authentication Server

Note: As with the export of the certificates, this process needs to be followed for both the Authenticate Server encryption and IdP Signing certificates.

1. To start the Certificate MMC, run certlm.msc.

• 🔿 🙋 📆 🤞 🙀 🗟	. ? .					
Certificates - Local Computer Personal	Issued To Microsoft Exchange Server Aut	Issued By Microsoft Exchange Server Auth C	Expiration Date 06/12/2024	Intended Purposes Server Authenticati	Friendly Name Microsoft Exchange Server A	uth Certific
Certificates Trusted Root Certification Au Enterprise Trust Intermediate Certification Au Trusted Publishers Untrusted Certificates Trusted Deublishers Client Authentication Issuers Preview Build Roots Certificate Enrollment Reques Smart Card Trusted Roots Trusted Devices Windows Ling ID Kenn Issue	ໃ글Jeover 일국 WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	server WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	02/01/2025 30/12/2029	Server Authenticati Server Authenticati	Microsoft Exchange WMSVC-SHA2	
Windows Live ID Token Issue	٢					





2. Right-click Certificates in the Personal store, select All Tasks > Import.







4. Enter the path to the file you previously exported.

		×
~	🝜 Certificate Import Wizard	
	File to Import	
	Specify the file you want to import.	
	<u>F</u> ile name:	
	C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert Export.pfx Browse	Browse lowing formats: 7B)
	Note: More than one certificate can be stored in a single file in the following formats:	
	Personal Information Exchange- PKCS #12 (.PFX,.P12)	
	Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard-PKCS #7 Certificates (.P7B)	
	Microsoft Serialized Certificate Store (.SST)	
	<u>N</u> ext Cance	el l





6. Enter the password that you used when exporting the certificate.

Pr	rivate key protection To maintain security, the private key was protected with a password.
	Type the password for the private key.
	Password:
	-
	Import options:
	Enable strong private key protection. You will be prompted every time the private key is used by an application if you enable this option.
	Mark this key as exportable. This will allow you to back up or transport your keys at a later time.
	Protect private key using virtualized-based security(Non-exportable)
	☐ Include all extended properties.



←	😓 Certificate Import Wizard	×
	Certificate Store Certificate stores are system areas where certificates are kept.	
	Windows can automatically select a certificate store, or you can specify a location for the certificate.	
	 Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of certificate Place all certificates in the following store 	
	Certificate store:	
	Personal Browse	
	<u>N</u> ext Canc	el



8. Click Next.

←	Certificate Import Wizard		×
	Completing the Certific	cate Import Wizard	
	The certificate will be imported after	you dick Finish.	
	You have specified the following set	tings:	
	Certificate Store Selected by User	Personal	
	Content	PFX	
	File Name	C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert E	хрс
	<		>
		<u> </u>	ancel

9. Click Finish.



10. Click **OK**.



4.8 MyID Authentication Server Directory configuration

MyID Authentication Server Directory must be configured before you can provision users for Multi-Factor Authentication or password policies created.

4.8.1 Directory Configuration Wizard

This section should be performed on the server running the MyID Authentication Server.

Note: This section of the installation process requires the logged-on user to have Domain Admin rights in the domain containing MyID Users and the domain containing the Authentication Server. Alternatively, an Enterprise Admin account can be used.

1. Start the MyID Directory Configuration Wizard.

The MyID Directory Configuration Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. It can also be started from the **Directory Configuration Wizard** action from the **Actions** of the MMC.

Start the MyID Management Console from the Windows Start menu:

Start > All Programs > MyID Authentication Server Management Console

Note: Ensure that you are logged on with domain administrator account and not a local administrator account.





- 3. If the Active Directory Forest contains more than one domain and this is the first time the directory is being configured:
 - a. Select the Active Directory Domain you want to use to store MyID configuration data.

O Directory Configuration Wizard			×
Primary MyID Domain Choose the Primary MyID Domain.			
Select an Active Directory Domain which will be configuration data. Active Directory Domains authlogicsdemo.com child.authlogicsdemo.com	used to store My	ID Authentication	n Server
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Directory Configuration Wizard		×
Directory Connection Verification Verify the connectivity to the specified Directory service.		
		^
Test Connection		×
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



4. Click the Test Connection button.

This ensures that the MyID Authentication Server can access the specified directory.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Directory Connection Verification Verify the connectivity to the specified Directory service.	
 Establishing connection 2 Domains found. Done. MyID primary domain: authlogicsdemo.com Reading Global Settings Not found. The directory will be configured for first use. Checking rights in directory Done. Test Completed 	×
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

5. If the test is successful and all the necessary information has been collected, click **Next**, otherwise correct the issue, and try again.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the directory settings?	
The Directory Configuration Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure MyID Authentication Server for use with a directory service.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
Reprocess user data to latest storage version	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel

6. Click the **Reprocess user data to latest storage version** to upgrade the user information from a version 4 schema to the latest schema. For clean installations or native MyID version 5 deployment, this is not necessary.



7. Click Next.

This applies any configuration changes.



8. Click OK.

Important: After configuring the MyID Authentication server for use with Active Directory you *must* reboot the server – if you do not authentication services fail. These failures are reflected in the Windows Events – Application logs.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Directory configuration MyID Authentication Server is being updated with the settings.	
Update Progress	
 Saving Initialise settings Done. Committing settings to the directory Done. Creating AD Password Reset OTC storage Done. Creating IdP Grant storage Done. Looking for domains and realms 2 Domains found. Checking hash database for domain authlogicsdemo.com Skipped. Checking hash database for domain child.authlogicsdemo.com Skipped. Storage version: 10 The Directory Configuration Wizard is complete. 	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel

9. Examine the update progress information for any unexpected errors that may have occurred during the AD configuration.

This information is also logged in the Windows Application Event Log with Information Event ID 1719.

10. Click Finish.

4.8.2 Add users to the MyID Administrators Group

The MyID Directory Configuration wizard automatically adds the currently logged in user account to the MyID Administrators Active Directory security group. User accounts for the administrators of MyID must also be *manually* added to the MyID Administrators Active Directory security group.



4.9 MyID license configuration

The License Configuration Wizard is responsible for adding all license types to the Authentication Server.

Intercede supplies a unique license key for each product (PSM and MFA) specific to each Active Directory. The license key is entered in the Licence Configuration Wizard through the MMC. The license requires product activation, and the server periodically updates Intercede with license usage information - this requires Internet connectivity to

https://licencing.authlogics.com/* which must be maintained for the server to continue functioning.

In certain circumstances, Intercede may supply an offline license file. These digitally signed license files do not require product activation or any Internet connectivity. You must not modify or tamper with them – if you do, they are rendered inoperable. For more information contact Intercede Support.

4.9.1 Getting a free 10 user license or a 30-day trial license

Intercede provides a free MFA and PSM license for up to ten users. The free license does not include our standard product support and assistance and Intercede provides only email assistance on a best-effort basis. However, access to our knowledge base and community site is freely available, see:

support.authlogics.com

If you require additional users in the future, we can easily upgrade your existing license.

To test the MyID Authentication Server before you buy, you can get a free 30-day trial at any time, and when you decide MyID is for you we can update your license to a full one when you purchase, no reinstall is required.

A free or trial license is installed instantly so you can evaluate at your own pace, however, it does require Internet connectivity (HTTPS) to be installed and activated. If Internet connectivity is not available on the authentication server, please contact Intercede Support.





To obtain a license:

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.





- 3. Select Get a free 10 user license or Get a 30-day trial license.
- 4. Click Next.





5. Complete your details.

📀 Licence Wizard	×
30 day trial licence 30 day trial Licence regist	tration details.
Please provide valid compa Note: All fields must be com	ny information as it will be included in the issued licence. pleted to continue.
Contact Name:	John Doe
Company:	Acme Inc
Email Address:	john.doe@acme.inc
Tel Number:	555-1234
Number of Users:	1000
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

6. Click Next.

O Licence Wizard	×
Product Selection Choose which product licences to install	Zo
Select all the products which you are would like a licence for and the Licence Wiz register your details and install a licence for each one.	zard will
Available Products:	
< <u>B</u> ack Next >	Cancel

7. Select the product or products that you would like the licenses for.



8. Click Next.

📀 Licence Wizard		×
Licence configuration Licence Wizard is requesting a licence.		Ż
Update Progress		
Processing online licences		^
 Registering MFA licence Done. MFA Licence Key: 0e2c082 Downloading licence using key: 0e2c082 Done. 	1.1073 0315 030 denf e045	
- Licence details Product Name: Multi-Factor Authentication Company Name: Intercede - Test Environment Number of Users: 100		~
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The licenses are requested over the internet and are activated.

9. Click Finish.



4.9.2 Importing an offline license file

An offline license file may be issued by Intercede in certain circumstances. Please contact Intercede Support for eligibility. These licenses *do not* require Internet connectivity or activation.

If you have multiple license files, you must add them one at a time. Run the Licence Wizard again to add the second license file.

To import an offline license, you must use the Licence Wizard.

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.

Welcome to the Licence Wizard
Welcome to the Licence Wizard
This Wizard will allow you to easily request, upgrade, install and activate a MyID product licence. Each licence type provides full product functionality although they may be time limited.
To continue, click Next.



2. Click Next.

O Licence Wizard	×								
Licence type Apply an existing licence, request a free or trial licence.									
A licence can be requested over the Internet and installed immediately. You can also import an offline licence file or enter your licence key.									
◯ Get a free 10 user licence									
◯ Get a 30 day trial licence									
Import licence file(s)	Browse								
C Licence Key									
Enter your licence key (including dashes):									
< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel								

3. Select Import licence file(s), and click Browse.

💽 Import Licence File X										
🔶 -> -> -^ 🚹 -> TI	his PC > Local Disk (C:) > Licences				~ Č	Search Licences		٩		
Organize 👻 New fold	ler					EE 💌		•		
🖈 Quick access	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size						
Desktop #	Authlogics Dev - Multi-Factor Authentic	09/12/2019 10:55	LIC File	2 KB						
Downloads		09/12/2019 10:56	LIC File	2 KB						
Pictures #										
System32										
💻 This PC										
3D Objects										
Desktop										
Documents										
Downloads										
Music										
Pictures										
Videos										
Local Disk (C:)										
i Network										
File <u>r</u>	aame: Authlogics Dev - Multi-Factor Authentication	n.lic			~	Licence Files	Cancel	~		




4. Select one or more of your license files (ending in . LIC) and click **Open**.

🧿 Licence Wizar	d			×
Licence type Apply an exis	ting licence, request a free or tria	al licence.		Şe
	e requested over the Internet an e file or enter your licence key.	d installed immedi	ately. You can a	lso import
	⊖ Get a free 10 user licence			
	⊖ Get a 30 day trial licence			
	Import licence file(s)		Browse	
	C Licence Key			
	Enter your licence key (includi	ng dashes):		
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

5. Click Next.

The license or licenses are installed, and activation is skipped.

6. Click Finish.



4.9.3 Entering an existing license key

A license key is issued by Intercede at the point of purchase. License keys *do* require Internet connectivity for installation, activation, and ongoing license reporting metrics. No private or confidential information is reported back to Intercede.

If you have multiple license keys, you must add them one at a time. Run the wizard again to add the second license key.

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.

O Licence Wizard	×
Ins	Welcome to the Licence Wizard
	This Wizard will allow you to easily request, upgrade, install and activate a MyID product licence. Each licence type provides full product functionality although they may be time limited.
chift	To continue, click Next.
	< Back Next > Cancel

2. Click Next.





3. Select Licence Key and enter the license key that Intercede sent you.

📀 Licence Wizard	×
Licence type Apply an existing licence, request a free or trial licence.	Ż
A licence can be requested over the Internet and installed immediately. You can a an offline licence file or enter your licence key.	also import
◯ Get a free 10 user licence	
◯ Get a 30 day trial licence	
O Import licence file(s)	
Licence Key	
Enter your licence key (including dashes):	
QSXNA-GXKZN-MUHI2-VPRLR-3XJO7M	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. Click Next.

Licence Wizard	×
Licence configuration Licence Wizard is requesting a licence.	Ż
Update Progress	
Processing online licences - Reading licence file C:\Licences\Authlogics Demo VM - MFA (Online).lic Done. - Licence details Product Name: Multi-Factor Authentication	^
Company Name: Authlogics Demo VM Number of Users: 1500 Licence Key: QSXNA- Building Content of Content of Content Expiry Date: Never Days remaining: Unlimited	v
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The license is installed and activated.

5. Click Finish.



4.10 MyID Password Security Management Wizard

The Password Security Management Wizard (PSM) is responsible for configuring domains in the Active Directory Forest for real-time and retrospective protection against known breached and shared passwords, as well as dormant accounts. This includes:

- Analyzing existing password hashes in AD.
- · Setting a remediation protection schedule.
- · Setting the account remediation policy.
- Setting the alerting actions and recipients.

Retrospective Protection: The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for doing all retrospective protection, remediation, and alerting work required by the schedule.

Real-Time Protection: The MyID Authentication Server works in conjunction with the MyID Domain Controller Agent (DCA) to provide real-time protection of Active Directory passwords. The Domain Controller Agent intercepts password changes at the Domain Controller as they happen and queries the MyID Authentication Server to check if the password should be accepted.

Note: A PSM Password Policy must be configured, enabled, and applied through Group Policy to the Domain Controllers as well as the MyID Authentication Servers for the policy to take effect. For more information, see section 7.1, *Configuring the MyID Password Policy settings*.

The MyID Authentication Server requires Internet access to query the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud.

A fully offline copy of the MyID Password Breach Database can be installed on the MyID Authentication Server; you can download this from:

www.intercede.com/support/downloads



4.10.1 Starting the Password Security Management Wizard

1. Start the Password Security Management Wizard.

You can start the Password Security Management Wizard by clicking **Password Security Management Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.



2. Click Next.

Password S	ecurity Management Wizard X
	nd Shared Password Protected AD Domains AD Domains For use With Password Security Management.
Directory Brea	curity Management provides real-time And retrospective protection Of Active ached And Shared Password per Domain. Selected AD domains will be r use With Breached And Shared Password protection And unselected domains otected. Enabled on Active Directory Domains
	< Back Next > Cancel

3. Select the domain or domains that you want to enable MyID PSM password protection on.



4. Click Next.

Password Security Management Wizard ×
Remediation And Alerting Processing Schedule Configure When scheduled Remediation And Alert sending should run.
Scheduled user account scans For breached And Shared passwords are important For maintaining the security Of passwords As they could become compromised after they have been changed.
Remediation and Alerting Schedule Schedule start: 18 January 2024 Repeat cycle: Daily Recur every: 1 day
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

The MyID Authentication Server provides the ability to run Password Security Management remediation and alerting on a scheduled basis.

5. Select the Schedule start date and time.

This is when you want to schedule to start.

- 6. Select the Repeat cycle and recurrence cycle. The available options are:
 - Run Once
 - Hourly
 - Daily
 - Weekly
 - Monthly



7. Click Next.

Password Security Management Wizard	
PSM Remediation And Alert Actions Choose the action To take When a specific password issue Is found.	
When a password scan finds a breached Or S automatically updated To reduce its risk. Alerts people regarding the action taken.	hared password, the account status can be can be sent via email To one Or more relevant
Breached Password Found	Shared Password Found
Set account status to:	Set account status to:
No change ~	No change ~
Send alert notification email to:	Send alert notification email to:
Administrators	Administrators
User	Manager User
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

8. Select what you want to happen when breached or shared passwords are found.

Password Security Management can alert Administrators, Managers or Users for newly detected breached or shared passwords.

PSM also includes auto-remediation functionality where accounts can be disabled or users can be forced to change their password at next logon for breached or shared passwords.

You must set the account status for detected breached passwords and shared passwords to one of the following:

- No change.
- Must change password at next logon.
- Account is disabled.

You can also select who receives an alert about the breached or shared password.

- · Administrators.
- Managers.
- · Users.



9. Click Next.

Password Security Management Wizard		
Dormant Account Remediation And Alert Actions Choose the action To take When a specific account issue Is found.		
When an account scan finds a dormant accour updated to reduce its risk. Alerts can be sent via regarding the action taken.		
Dormant AD Account Found	Dormant MFA Account Found	
Set account status to:	Set account status to:	
No change 🗸	No change ~	
Send alert notification email to:	Send alert notification email to:	
Administrators	Administrators	
User	User	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

10. Select what happens when dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts are found.

Password Security Management can alert Administrators, Managers or Users for newly detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts.

PSM also includes auto-remediation functionality that can disable accounts or force users to change their password at their next logon for breached or shared passwords.

You must set the account status for detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts to one of the following:

- No change.
- Must change password at next logon.
- · Account is disabled.

You can also select who receives an alert about the detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts.

- Administrators.
- Managers.
- Users.



11. Click Next.

O Password Se	ecurity Management Wizard X
	pptional group of user accounts who will use PSM.
IS NOT speci	word Security Management protection to members of the group only. If a group fied then all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected. SM user requires a PSM licence.
	Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group AUTHLOGICSDEMO\PSM Users Browse
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

To limit which users can use PSM (and therefore require a license), select **Enable Password Security Management Users group** and then click **Browse** to select an Active Directory Group containing the user accounts to include.

12. Click Next.

Password Se	curity Management Wizard X
. Ionio aration	and Alerts Exclusion ptional group of user accounts to exclude from remediation and alerts.
real-time passv	and Alerts will not be actioned on members of the specified group, however, word policy checks will still apply when a password is changed. This can be ice Accounts.
	Remediation and Alerts Exclusion
	Enable Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group
	Browse
	Diowse
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel



13. Click Next.

Password Security Management is configured.

Password Security Management Wizard	×
Password Security Management Wizard Password Security Management Wizard is being updated with the settings.	
Update Progress	
- Configuring Password Security Management - Enabling PSM on Domain: authlogicsdemo.com Re-enabled. - Processing user data in Active Directory (may take a few minutes) Done. - Saving settings Done. The Password Security Management Wizard is complete.	~
	Ŷ
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

14. Click Finish.



4.11 YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard

The YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard is responsible for managing reprogrammed YubiKey tokens; this means that YubiKey OTPs are processed by the MyID Authentication Server and that access to the Internet-based YubiKey servers is *not* required for validation.

If you want to validate YubiKey OTPs using the Internet-based YubiKey servers for tokens that have not been reprogrammed, the MyID Authentication Server still requires Internet access.

For information on how to reprogram YubiKey tokens and create a YubiKey Personalization CSV file, see the *Configuring YubiKey devices* section of the **YubiKey Reprogramming Guide**.

4.11.1 Starting the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard

1. Start the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard.

You can start the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard by clicking **YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.





2. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard X
YubiKey OTP Settings Configure the basic settings for YubiKey OTP.
Choose the preferred settings to use for YubiKey OTP for the system. These settings can be changed later via the YubiKey OTP settings tab.
Enable YubiKey OTP
Enable Yubico Online Authentication
Require PIN / AD Password
Minimum PIN Length: 4 🖨 digits
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

3. Configure YubiKey OTP options.

Select **Enable Yubico Online Authentication** to send YubiKey OTPs to Yubico's servers to verify the validity of the YubiKey token.

Choose if you want the user to require knowledge as well as the YubiKey when logging in. Knowledge adds a factor to the authentication. For the knowledge, the user's Active Directory password can be used instead of a PIN, or the user can select a PIN. Alternatively, a PIN can be automatically generated, or not required at all for OTP-only validation. To require knowledge, select the **Require PIN / AD Password** option.

If you have enabled knowledge, choose the Minimum PIN Length.



4. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard X
Add or Remove OTP YubiKeys Import YubiKey OTP data or remove all existing data.
Select to import new data from the YubiKey Personalization Tool into MyID or remove all existing data. Existing YubiKey OTP entries will be updated with the new data if a duplicate is found.
O Do Not Change Personalization Tool data
Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data
O Remove existing YubiKey Personalization Tool data
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

5. Select Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data.

6. Click Next.

(V) YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard		×
Add YubiKeys Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data file.		Z
Select the output CSV file created by the YubiKe duplicate entries exist in the CSV file only the last		ed.lf
YubiKey Personalization Tool CSV file pa	ath: <u>B</u> rowse	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel





7. Click Browse and select the YubiKey Personalization Tool generated CSV file.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
Add YubiKeys Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data file.	Ż
Select the output CSV file created by the YubiKey Personalization Tool to be imported. If duplicate entries exist in the CSV file only the last entry will be stored.	
YubiKey Personalization Tool CSV file path: C:\YubiKey\YubiKey Config.csv	
Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel

8. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?	Şo
The YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard has gathered all the information required to the YubiKey OTP data.	o configure
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



9. Click Next.

(V) YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
YubiKey OTP configuration Authentication Server is updating YubiKey OTP data.	Ż
Update Progress	
Updating YubiKey OTP settings Done Loading YubiKey OTP database Not Found Creating YubiKey OTP database Done Reading data from CSV file Done 1 YubiKey entries found in CSV import file. Importing YubiKey cccdccbufjvc slot 1 Done	^
The YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard is complete.	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel

The configuration is applied and the YubiKey database is imported.

10. Click Finish.



5

Administering the MyID Authentication Server

The MyID Management Console provides administrators with the ability to configure MyID settings and administer users. Functionality and options may differ depending on the product license installed.

📀 MylD Management Console		-	• ×
<u> </u>	elp		- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📰 🗟 🔢			
🚆 MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com Top level Containers in the Active Directory domain authlogicsdemo.com	Actions	
V Domains	🛍 Authlogics Servers	authlogicsdemo.com	•
 authlogicsdemo.com 	Suiltin 2010	OUs / Containers	
> 📓 Authlogics Servers > 🧾 Builtin	Company Groups		
> 📓 Company Groups	Company Users Managed Service Accounts	All Users	
> Company Users	Microsoft Exchange Security Groups	Q Search for User Accounts	
> Managed Service Account	Users	👗 Add User Account	
> 📓 Microsoft Exchange Secur		View	•
> 🛄 Users		New Window from Here	
💷 Realms			
Applications		Q Refresh	
- External Identities		🗟 Export List	
✓ Administrators → Administrators		Help	
> Coperators			
> Coperators			
> PSM Users			
> iii PSM Exclusion			
< >			

The MyID Management Console provides Administrators with the ability to manage the following:

- Directory Configuration
- MyID Global Settings
- MyID Users in Domains or Realms
- · Applications
- External Identities
- User Roles

5.1

MyID Management Console views

The MyID Management Console displays both the MFA and PSM users.

PSM only users.

MFA only users.

The MyID Management Console is suited to small deployments and also scales to very large Active Directory environments. This is achieved by utilizing the **OUs / Containers** and the **All Users** view for Active Directory Domains, and a Realms view for External users.

The Active Directory view can be chosen by selecting the domain and toggling between the two options.



5.1.1 OUs / Containers view

The OUs / Containers view is the default view that allows the Active Directory OU structure to be traversed. You can search for user accounts from the domain level or an OU or Container. All users in an OU tree can be found for by searching for the wildcard "*".

	O MyID Management Console O Eile Action ⊻iew Window E	elp				— E	
v Domains Account Name First Name Last Name Description v authologies Generacion autinichia Alia Micha v authologies Generacion autinichia Alia Micha v authologies Generacion autinichia Alia Micha v autono ganary Groups alia Alia Kiesel Alia Refresh Users v alor ganary Groups alor kash Kiesel Alia Kiesel v alor ganary Groups alor kash Kiesel Alia Kiesel v alor ganary Groups alor kash Kiesel Alia Kiesel v alor kash Kiesel Alia Refresh Users Alia devector v alor kash Rountree Bleak Norcet v autonovate Autin Rountree Norcet v alor kash Babete Platter Refresh v alor kash Bobbe Mickely Refresh v alor kash Generacion Cornery Refresh v alor kash Generacion Generacion Refresh v alor kash Generacion Cornery Seordio Seordio							
	Image:	Germany All User Acc Account Name & sili.micha & sintex-coley & altaxiscel & altaxi	First Name Ali Aindey Aloysia Aloysia Aloysia Aloysia Aloysia Aloysia Bebte Belinda Bebte Calley Carin Carina Cariye Cary Cary Cary Catice Catice Cherin	Last Name Micha Coley Kissel Bleak Rountree Plattner Coomey Miskelly Ocon Rhoe Deitoro Vessella Rabeck Moesch Norcott Grabowski Hanners	Description	Germany Sarch for User Accounts Refresh Users Add User Account View New Window from Here Refresh Sport List	

5.1.2 All Users view

The **All Users** view is a single view that lists all users for the entire domain. Since all users are loaded for the domain at once this view may be slower to load on large domains.

MyID Management Console	elp					-	
	icib.						
					_		
MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com	All Authlogics User Acco	ounts in container authlogics	demo.com		Actions	
Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	^	authlogicsdemo.com	
✓ ∰ authlogicsdemo.com	& adda.dimario	Adda	Dimario			OUs / Containers	
> Authlogics Servers > Builtin	addie.hintz	Addie	Hintz				
> Builtin > Company Groups	adele.starzynski	Adele	Starzynski			All Users	
 Company Groups Company Users 	adelind.demyan	Adelind	Demyan			Q Search for User Accounts	
> 🖬 England	adelle.kilbury	Adelle	Kilbury			💈 Refresh Users	
> France	& Administrator			Built-in account for administering the		👗 Add User Account	
Germany	adriaens.wrynn	Adriaens	Wrynn			-	
> ireland	& adrianna.canclini	Adrianna	Canclini			View	
> 💼 Italy	aili.micha	Aili	Micha			New Window from Here	
> 🗊 Scotland	& ainsley.coley	Ainsley	Colev			Q Refresh	
> 📔 Spain	aliza.kiesel	Aliza	Kiesel			-	
> 💼 Wales	allys.kazi	Allys	Kazi			Export List	
> 🗐 Zimbabwe	& aloysia.lanese	Alovsia	Lanese			🕜 Help	
> Managed Service Account	ame.threats	Ame	Threats				
> Microsoft Exchange Secur	& amitie.bleak	Amitie	Bleak				
> 🔛 Users	austin.rountree	Austin	Rountree				
Realms	& babette.plattner	Babette	Plattner				
Applications	& belinda.coomey	Belinda	Coomey				
Roles	& bobbe.miskelly	Bobbe	Miskelly				
Administrators	alley.ocon	Calley	Ocon				
> Operators	arin.rhoe	Carin	Rhoe				
> RADIUS Users	arlina.deltoro	Carlina	Deltoro				
> PSM Users	ariye.vessella	Carlye	Vessella				
> C PSM Exclusion	aryn.rabeck	Caryn	Rabeck				
	atlee.moesch	Catlee	Moesch				
	atriona.norcott	Catriona	Norcott				
	acharis.grabowski	Charis	Grabowski				
	& cherin.hanners	Cherin	Hanners				
	Christel.miko	Christel	Miko		~		
>	< C			>			



5.1.3 Updating PSM users

PSM users are automatically added to the MyID Management Console when the user interacts with MyID using either an Active Directory password change or a Self-service portal login. These users can be made into MFA users (provided a valid MFA license exists) by running the **User Account Update** user action.

1. Start the User Account Update Wizard.

You can start the User Account Update Wizard for a user from the MMC by clicking on a user and then clicking **User Account Update**, under their username in **Actions**.

Eile Action View Window H	elp					- 6
• 🔿 🙍 📩 🔂 🖬						
MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com	All Authlogics User Acc	ounts in container authlogics	demo.com	Actions	
 Domains iii authlogicsdemo.com 	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	authlogicsdemo.com	
> C Authlogics Servers	🌡 addie.hintz	Addie	Hintz		OUs / Containers	
> 🧰 Builtin	🌡 adele.starzynski	Adele	Starzynski		All Users	
> 道 Company Groups	🌡 adelind.demyan	Adelind	Demyan		Q Search for User Accounts	
🗸 💼 Company Users	adelle.kilbury	Adelle	Kilbury			
> 🛋 England	🔏 Administrator			Built-in account for administering the	🥭 Refresh Users	
> 🖆 France	🌡 adriaens.wrynn	Adriaens	Wrynn		🚓 Add User Account	
💼 Germany	🌡 adrianna.canclini	Adrianna	Canclini		View	
> 💼 Ireland	🌡 aili.micha	Aili	Micha		New Window from Here	
> 📫 Italy > 🗊 Scotland	ainsley.coley	Ainsley	Coley			
> Cotland	🌡 aliza.kiesel	Aliza	Kiesel		Q Refresh	
> 🖬 Spain > 🛱 Wales	🌡 allys.kazi	Allys	Kazi		🔿 Export List	
> i Zimbabwe	aloysia.lanese	Aloysia	Lanese		P Help	
> Managed Service Account	ame.threats	Ame	Threats		- nop	
> Microsoft Exchange Secur	🌡 amitie.bleak	Amitie	Bleak		eda.delisle	
> 📋 Users	austin.rountree	Austin	Rountree		Send SMS	
💷 Realms	& babette.plattner	Babette	Plattner		& User Account Update	
Applications	& belinda.coomey	Belinda	Coomey			
External Identities	& bobbe.miskelly	Bobbe	Miskelly		🗙 Delete	
🍇 Roles	alley.ocon	Calley	Ocon		Properties	
> 📫 Administrators	acarin.rhoe	Carin	Rhoe		P Help	
> 📫 Operators	arlina.deltoro	Carlina	Deltoro		In the p	
> 🧰 RADIUS Users	arlye.vessella	Carlye	Vessella			
> C PSM Users	aryn.rabeck	Caryn	Rabeck			
> PSM Exclusion	& catlee.moesch	Catlee	Moesch			
	& catriona.norcott	Catriona	Norcott			
	& charis.grabowski	Charis	Grabowski			
	& cherin.hanners	Cherin	Hanners Miko			
	🌡 christel.miko	Christel				
>	👗 eda.delisle	Eda	Delisle	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		





2. Click Next.

📀 User Acc	ount Manageme	nt Wizard				×
Account Genera	Options I options for the sele	ected user acc	ounts.			8
The acco this wizard	unt options specifie 1.	d here will appl	y to the use	r accounts	selected when	unning
	Account options					
	Account is a	disabled		Mobile pł	none private	
	Valid from:	19 January	2024		Always	
	Valid to:	19 January	2024		🗹 Always	
			< <u>E</u>	lack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

3. Set the **Account options**.

Account options determine the user's initial state. You can give accounts start and end validity dates and create them as disabled accounts for later use. You can also specify the mobile phone privacy setting.



4. Click Next.

🧿 User Account Management Wizard	×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the selected user accounts.	
The Passwordless authentication options specified here will apply to the user accounts selected when running this wizard.	
 Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication Enable Push Authentication Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App 	
	-
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ancel

Choose if you want to:

- Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication.
- Enable Push Authentication.
- Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App.

This option makes the user required to provide valid biometrics when accessing the Authenticator App.

5. Click Next.



6. If you chose to **Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication** for this user, the FIDO instruction letter can be emailed to the user.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
FIDO usage instruction email FIDO usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	8
Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fide Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

If a secondary email address is configured, the email can be sent to the alternate address.

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. If you chose to **Enable Push Authentication** for this user, a PUSH instruction letter can be emailed to the user.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
Push usage instruction email Push usage instructions can be emailed to the user using an HTML template.	8
 Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Pus Browse]
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

If a secondary email address is configured, the email can be sent to the alternate address.



9. Click Next.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	8
The User Account Update Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure th user accounts.	e
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ncel

10. Click Next.

This applies the configuration changes.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	8
Update Progress	
- Updating user account "eda.delisle" Sending email to "eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent.	^
Sending email to "eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com"	
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The user account is updated.

11. Click Finish.



5.2 Global settings walkthrough

The MyID global settings are a group of directory configuration options that apply to *all* MyID servers in the forest; they are not per-user settings.

To access the global settings:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the high-level **MyID** node. The name of this node includes the product name of the installed licenses.

For example, it may be called **MyID PSM & MFA**.

MyID Management Console						-	$\Box \times$
Sile Action View Window	Help						- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 📰 🔒 🛛 📅							
MyID PSM & MFA	MyID PSM &	MFA Conr	ected to Active I	Directory		Actions	
V Domains	-	80.80		<	<u>&</u>	MyID PSM & MFA	
> 🚔 authlogicsdemo.com		1.1	4	~	ৰক্ষ Roles	Directory Configuration Wizard	
Applications	Domains	Realms	Applications	External Identities	Roles	R Password Security Management Wizard	
- External Identities						Server Certificate Wizard	
Roles Administrators						YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	
> 🧰 Operators						🔠 Licence Wizard	
RADIUS Users PSM Users						View	+
> PSM Exclusion						New Window from Here	
						🔒 Export List	
						Properties	
						👔 Help	
]]	

2. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.

This opens the global MyID Properties dialog.

You can access the following tabs in the Properties dialog:

- General tab
- RADIUS tab
- · Alerts tab
- Remediation tab
- · Schedule tab
- · SMTP Delivery tab
- · SMS Delivery tab
- Licence tab
- Authenticator App tab
- Certificates tab
- Grid Pattern Policy tab
- · Grid Options tab
- Phrase tab



- One Time Code tab
- YubiKey OTP tab
- FIDO2 tab
- MyID CMS tab



5.2.1 General tab

The General tab contains the **Account Lockout Policy**, **Multi-Factor Factor Timing**, and **Temporary Access** options.

MyID MFA Properties ×							
Grid Options							
	FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy						
Account Lo	ckout Policy						
Account lo	ockout duration	:	Þ	-	minutes		
Account lo	ockout threshold	d:	1	0 🗘	attempts		
Reset acc	ount lockout co	ounter after:	1	•	minutes		
Multi-Factor	Timing						
Maximum	Authenticator A	pp time delta	a: 3	* *	minutes		
Real-Time	Token Lifespar	n:	1	5 🌲	minutes		
Temporary A	Access Codes						
🗹 Allow T	emporary Acce	ss Codes					
Maximum	usage time pem	nitted:	2	4 🗘	hours		
Maximum number of uses: 3 🚖 logons							
	[OK	С	ancel	Apply		

The Account Lockout Policy settings take effect when a user logs on incorrectly after the amount of invalid logon attempts specified in the Account lockout threshold setting within the lockout counter period. The lockout counter period is set the Reset lockout counter after setting. Accounts that are attempted to be logged onto in an invalid manner that many times are locked out for the Account lockout duration.

Allowed soft token time delta allows you to configure how many minutes difference are allowed between the clock of a two-factor device compared to the clock of the MyID server.

Real-time Token Lifespan allows you to configure how many minutes after being provided that a Real-Time token can be used for before it expires. After this period has exceeded, the token can no longer be used.

Temporary access codes are a feature that allows a user to log in with a temporary PIN or password in an emergency or as a first usage code. The user is provided with a PIN or password and the usage of the password is limited by time, or by the number of uses. Unlike a standard password, the temporary access code or password is self-managed and expires automatically.

The default time limit for temporary access code is 24 hours and three logons. Once these limits are reached, or the user logs on using Multi-Factor Authentication and the temporary access requirements have ended, the user's temporary access is automatically removed.



5.2.2 RADIUS tab

The RADIUS tab allows you to configure RADIUS options that are not available within Microsoft NPS.

MyID PS	M &	MFA P	roperties	5						×
Grid Opt	ions	Phrase	e One	Time	Code	Yu	biKey (OTP	Authentio	cator App
FIDO2			Certifica	ates	SMTP	De	livery	SMS	Delivery	
General	RA	DIUS	Alerts	Rer	nediatio	n	Scheo	lule	Grid Patte	em Policy
Policy	De	fault								~
RAD	IUS (Options								
	Enal	ble Mobi	ile Push			9	Open I	Vetwo	rk Policy S	Server
		Require	AD pass	word	before	Mol	bile Pu	sh		
	Disa	ble Dev	iceless L	ogon	s					
	Enal	bled 2-S	tep Logo	ns (F	asswor	d + (OTP vi	ia Aco	ess-Challe	enge)
	Max	kimum tir	me betwe	een s	teps:	6	0	* *	seconds	
Enable RADIUS extensions										
		Return /	AD passv	vord t	to supp	ort p	asswo	rdless	logons	
	Rep	ly-Mess	age (18) f	for us	e with /	Acce	ess-Ch	alleng	e:	
					ОК	1	С	ancel		Apply

Using the drop-down list, specify the **Policy** for which you want to configure the **RADIUS Options**.

You can select a level of access control over which users are allowed to use RADIUS authentication through specifying the IP addresses and groups that are allowed to access the policy. Users must fit the criteria for at least one RADIUS enabled access control policy to prevent them from failing the RADIUS logon request. For information on setting up access control policies, see section *5.9.1*, *Access control policies*.



MyID RADIUS supports Mobile Push authentication over RADIUS; to enable this, select the **Enable Mobile Push** option.

If you want a Push to be sent after a password has been successfully verified, select **Require AD** password before Mobile Push. This is performed in a single RADIUS request. When disabled, a Push is sent to the user with only a username being received over RADIUS.

If you enable the **Disable Deviceless Logons** option, users are prevented from using Grid Pattern and Phrase OTPs generated in deviceless mode and are forced to use a two-factor generated OTP for RADIUS connections.

You can configure a two-step logon process using the RADIUS Access-Challenge attribute by setting the **Enable 2-Step Logons** option.

Step 1: If the Active Directory username and password is valid, then the Access-Challenge is returned, which tells the RADIUS client to request an OTP. If the Active Directory password is invalid, then an Access-Reject is returned.

Step 2: If the OTP is received within the allowed time (60 seconds by default) and it is valid, an Access-Accept is returned. If the OTP is invalid another Access-Challenge is returned to prompt the RADIUS client to request a new OTP. An Access-Reject is returned for any OTP received after the allowed time.

You can select **Enable RADIUS extensions** to send additional metadata about the user to the RADIUS client. Additionally, the user's password can be returned to the RADIUS client to support Single Sign-On (for example, on Citrix Access Gateways). The password is returned as clear text over RADIUS; however, it is encrypted in transit using the RADIUS shared secret. Returning the password requires the MyID Password Vault to be enabled on the Active Directory tab.



5.2.3 Alerts tab

The Alerts tab allows you to configure multiple alerting options based on the type of event and the recipient.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties ×						
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code Yubil Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery L General RADIUS Alerts Remediation S	-	FIDO2	enticator Ap MyID CM Pattern Polic	IS		
Active Directory Password Alerts Breached password found:	Admin	User	Manager			
Shared password found: Password expires within 10 1 days:						
Account and Licence Alerts	Admin	User	Manager			
AD account domant for 120 🚖 days:	\checkmark					
MFA account dormant for 110 🚔 days:	\checkmark					
MFA account locked out:	\checkmark	\checkmark				
MFA device change on user account:	\checkmark	\checkmark				
Licence events:						
ОК	Cancel		Apply			

Note: Alerts are sent through SMTP and cannot be configured unless an SMTP server is configured first. The options available are dependent on what license types are installed and which PSM policies are configured.

Administrators receive a summary email instead of individual emails for each user whenever possible. Administrator emails are sent to the email address of all the accounts in the Authlogics Administrators role, if any.

If **Manager** is selected, an alert is sent to the email address of the user account specified as the **Manager** for the user account within Active Directory. If no manager has been specified, then the alert is not sent.



5.2.4 Remediation tab

The Remediation tab allows you to configure an automatic resolution based on the type of condition found.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties	<				
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Alerte Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy	;				
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy PSM Remediation Action Domant AD Account: No change					
if account not used within 120 🗘 days					
Breached Password: No change ~					
Enable PSM Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group					
MFA Remediation Action					
Dormant MFA Account: No change					
OK Cancel Apply					

Remediation provides an automated way to fix common user account issues to prevent security breaches. Automating these fixes is important as they are time-sensitive and often overlooked by manual processes.

If an account is found that has a breached or shared password, or is dormant, then the account can be set to:

- No change the default. You are initially recommended to leave this and analyze the administrator alerts before you enable remediation to allow you to assess the impact of enabling it.
- **Must change at next logon** once you have analyzed the impact of remediation, you are recommended to set this for accounts with breached or shared passwords.
- Account is disabled once you have analyzed the impact of remediation, you are recommended to set this for dormant accounts and dormant MFA accounts.



5.2.5 Schedule tab

The Schedule tab allows you to configure when breached and shared password remediation and alerting takes place.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X							
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App							
Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS							
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy							
Remediation and Alerting Schedule							
Enable Schedule							
Schedule start: 20 January 2024 🔍 01:00:00 🚖							
Repeat cycle: Daily ~							
Recur every: 1 🚖 day							
Next run: 01:00:00 20 January 2024							
Note: Password expiry alerting as well as alerting and remediation for dormant accounts will always run daily at midnight and not based on this schedule.							
Alerts for MFA account lockouts and device changes are triggered in real-time, not based on this schedule.							
Start PSM Wizard Run Now							
OK Cancel Apply							

It is recommended to run the schedule daily and out of hours; however, this can be customized as required. The processing work is only performed on the primary MyID Server.

To run a check as soon as possible without waiting for the schedule click **Run Now**. This will begin the process within the next 15 minutes.

Note: Password expiry alerting and alerting and remediation for dormant accounts always runs daily at midnight and not based on this schedule. Also, alerts for MFA account lockouts and device changes are triggered in real-time, not based on this schedule.



5.2.6 SMTP Delivery tab

When you provision users using the MyID Management Console, they can be sent an email with details of how to access the Self Service Portal, their initial pattern, PINs, and other necessary logon information. Alerts are also sent to administrators using email. The SMTP Delivery tab allows administrators to set the SMTP host and port for the email server for email message delivery.

MyID PSM & MFA Prope	ties			×		
Grid Options Phrase O	ne Time Code	YubiKey OTP	Authe	nticator App		
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy						
Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS						
Email delivery options						
From address:	administrator@a	authlogicsdemo	.com			
SMTP server 1:	server.authlogic	sdemo.com	25	* *		
SMTP server 2:	server2.authlog	icsdemo.com	587	-		
Use SSL/TLS Encryption Send Test Email						
Email authentication options						
O Anonymous (N	lo authentication)				
O Windows Integrated (Computer account credentials)						
Specify Creder	ntials:					
Usemame: authlogicsdemo\administrator						
Password: •••••						
	OK	Cance	1	Apply		

The From address setting specifies the email address that delivered mail is received from.

Note: Ensure that the **From** address can deliver emails to users through any anti-spam filters.

A primary SMTP must be specified to send an email. A secondary SMTP may be specified for redundancy purposes. The secondary server is only used if the sending fails when using the primary server. Enter the **SMTP server 1** and **SMTP server 2** DNS names or IP addresses and corresponding port numbers. If the servers require an encrypted connection, enable the **Use SSL/TLS Encryption** option.

If your email server requires authentication, select either **Use default Integrated credentials** or **Specify Credentials** and provide a username and password of an account with credentials to authenticate to the email server. These credentials are stored with 256bit AES asymmetric encryption.





To ensure that the SMTP details are valid:

- 1. Click Send Test Email.
- 2. Enter a test email.



3. Click OK.



A confirmation that the message has been sent is displayed is the send was successful; if the test email is not sent correctly, an error stating the SMTP issue is displayed.



5.2.7 SMS Delivery tab

The SMS Delivery tab allows administrators to set the SMS/Text delivery providers for SMS/Text message delivery and the **Message options**. MyID can use SMS messages for delivery of two-factor tokens to mobile devices that do not have soft-tokens.

The administrator can also send notification or broadcast messages to one or many users through the MMC by right-clicking an account and selecting the **Send SMS** option.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS
SMS / Text delivery provider
Provider: Disabled Veb Site
Usemame: AQL
Password:
Use SSL/TLS Encryption Send Test SMS
Message Options
✓ Overwrite previous message ✓ Enable SMS Flash
From Info: SMS IN
Retry Send Limit: 6 A Messages / hour / user
Default Country Code: Zimbabwe (+263)
OK Cancel Apply

The **Provider** list is preconfigured with some commonly used Internet-based SMS providers from around the globe. If you do not have an account with an SMS provider, you can choose one from the list and click the **Web site** link; this takes you to the provider's sign up page where you typically sign up for a free trial account.

Select your SMS provider and enter the Username and Password details for it.



To ensure that the SMS provider credentials are valid:

- 1. Click Send Test SMS.
- 2. Enter a test mobile number.

SMS Test	×
Enter the phone number to send the test SMS message to:	ОК
	Cancel
+1-555-1234	

3. Click OK.

If you receive a text message on the specified mobile device, then the provider details are correct.

Some providers allow SMS messages from the same source to overwrite previous SMS messages. To allow this, enable **Select Overwrite previous message**. For SMS messages to be delivered as a Flash SMS, select **Enable SMS Flash**.

The **From Info** setting specifies the number that all messages appear to be delivered from.

The **Retry Send Limit** setting prevents more than the specified number of text messages to be delivered to a specific user per hour.

The **Default Country Code** prefixes mobile phone numbers with the selected dialing code for all mobile numbers that do not have an international dialing code.



5.2.8 Licence tab

The Licence tab displays the loaded license information.

MyID PSM & MFA Prope	erties		×				
Grid Options Phrase (General RADIUS Ale Certificates SMTP Deliv	rts Remediatio	n Schedule	Grid Pattern Policy				
Licence Information							
Product:	Password Security Management 🗸						
Licence Key:	SSHKANKYGU POSCP-TYYCNAKKSPOK						
Company Name:	Authlogics Demo VM						
Expiry Date:	Never						
Activation Status:	Activated OK						
Usage Reported:	19 January 2024						
Remove		[Update				
Licence Usage							
Licence Quantity:	1600 Refresh						
Licences Used:							
	ОК	Cance	<u>A</u> pply				

Details of the selected license are displayed for your information, including the number of licenses supported and the dates during which they are valid. Details of your Multi-Factor Authentication and Password Security Management licenses can be viewed and modified by selecting the **Product** from the drop-down list.

You can remove licenses by selecting the **Product** that the license is for, and clicking the **Remove** button. If you have removed a license, the Remove button is replaced by the **Add** button. If you click the **Add** button, the Licence Configuration Wizard starts.

The license is automatically refreshed periodically but *must* be updated at least every 60 days. If your license details change, for example if you renew your subscription or purchase more user license, or you want to manually update the usage reporting, click the **Update** button to get the latest license version from Intercede.

The number of used licenses is updated periodically; however, you can update it as needed by clicking the **Refresh** button.



5.2.9 Authenticator App tab

The Authenticator App tab allows you to customize the appearance and functionality of the MyID Authenticator app that is installed on mobile devices from popular App Stores.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X						
FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Grid Options Phrase	Alerts Rer	SMTP De mediation Code Yu	Sched	lule	Grid Patte	em Policy
Cloud Connection Cloud Location: Custom DNS Ho	United I	Sync)				~
In-App Options Use Biometrics Enable One Time Passcode copy & paste Enable Transaction Validation						
Custom Branding Logo URL: Logo Description		ycompany. Jany	com/log	go/pn	9	
		ОК	C	ancel		Apply

To allow the Authenticator App to perform an online pairing and Mobile Push authentication, select a **Cloud Location** region. Once you have registered a mobile device, you cannot change this value unless you remove all devices.

Note: The **Cloud Location** option replaces the **Enable Online Device access** option. On a clean installation, or during an upgrade from an installation with **Enable Online Device access** enabled, the **Cloud Location** is set to **United Kingdom**. During an upgrade from an installation with **Enable Online Device access** disabled, the **Cloud Location** is set to **None**.

To host your own instance of the web service and to set your own URL, contact Intercede customer support.

The in-app Authenticator App options can also be customized. Once these are set, they cannot be changed by the user.

To show a custom logo at the top of the Authenticator App, enter a public URL to a graphic file that the mobile device can access. When provisioned, the Authenticator App accesses the URL and downloads and stores the graphic within the Authenticator App. The graphic should be a 900 x 210 transparent PNG image. For accessibility purposes. You are recommended to enter a description for the logo. This may just be the company name.


5.2.10 Certificates tab

The Certificates tab allows you to change the MyID Server signing certificate. This certificate is used to secure the MyID data stored in Active Directory and the Server Password Vault.

By default, the installation program generates a self-signed certificate.

This is *not* the certificate used by IIS for HTTPS (SSL) connections to the server.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence
Authentication Server Certificate Friendly Name: Authlogics Server Cert Subject Name: CN=*federationdemo.com Thumbprint: DE14AB8EAFD2706D04F0344E0AB4C1E4FD5B5
Expiry Date: 3/5/2034 2:34:50 PM Private Key: Yes Certificate Information Change
Client Trusted Root Certificate Friendly Name: Expiry Date: Certificate Information Browse
OK Cancel Apply

The Authentication Server Certificate contains the public and private keys used to carry out asymmetric encryption and decryption of the stored data. An instance of the certificate, along with its private key, must be installed on each MyID Server in the Windows Computer certificate store. If the private key is not available, the Authentication Server cannot operate.

Warning: If the private key is lost it is not possible to recover the MyID data stored in Active Directory.

If you are using the Windows Desktop Agent, you can select a MyID Server Certificate Trusted Root certificate. If there is an enterprise CA available, you can specify a CA root certificate. This requires that all MyID Desktop Agent machines have a certificate installed on them that was issued from the specified root. If such a certificate is unavailable, some of the agent's features are not available, for example, offline and passwordless logons. If a MyID Server Certificate Trusted Root certificate is not configured, the default Self Signed Certificates are used.

All Windows Desktop Agents connecting to the MyID Authentication Server using the External Access Server role must have a trusted certificate installed on it so that it can be validated by the MyID Authentication Server.



5.2.11 Grid Pattern Policy tab

This tab configures the pattern policy and complexity settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X						
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy						
Pattern Policy Minimum Length: 6 Pattern Pattern age in days: 2 min 42 max Enforce pattern history: 24 patterns remembered						
Pattem Complexity Enforce complexity: Block sequential straight lines Block single plane Restrict sequential linear adjacencies Restrict cell instance usage Restrict number of quadrants						
Maximum sequential linear adjacencies: 4 Maximum cell usage instances: 3 Minimum quadrant number: 1						
OK Cancel Apply						



The **Minimum length** setting determines the least number of characters allowed for a pattern. The larger the number, the more secure the patterns are, but the more complex they are for users to manage.

The minimum and maximum **Pattern age in days**, prevents users from excessive changes of patterns within a short period and forces users to change their pattern regularly.

By enabling **Enforce pattern history**, an administrator can prevent users from re-using previously used patterns. Specify how many previous patterns are remembered.

Enforcing complexity ensures that users do not choose simple patterns that could be easily guessed. Administrators can enforce the following complexity checks:

- Block sequential straight lines.
 - Blocks the use of a straight line in any direction in a contiguous chain and sequence.
- Block single plane.

Blocks the usability to select all positions in a pattern that are on the same plane in any orientation, regardless of spacing or sequence. This includes straight lines.

• Restrict sequential linear adjacencies.

Restricts the maximum number of allowed positions that are sequential and in a straight line before a gap and change of direction is required.

• Restrict cell instance usage.

Restricts the number of times the same cell can be selected when choosing a pattern. For example, if the **Maximum cell usage instances** is two then a maximum of two cells, within the selected pattern, can be re-used.

• Restrict number of quadrants.

Restricts the minimum number of quadrants a chosen pattern must use.

For example, if the **Minimum quadrant number** is two, then a pattern must use at least two of the four quadrants. While this encourages a user to choose a pattern that is well spread out, it also limits the number of possible pattern combinations available.



5.2.12 Grid Options tab

This tab configures generic and visual elements of MyID Grid authentication.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X
FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App
Grid Settings Minimum grid size: ● 6 × 6 squares ○ 8 × 8 squares Grid bitmap size: 250 → pixels wide & high
Send email grids as HTML
Grid Quadrant Colours Click a quadrant to change the colour which will be used to draw the quadrant background for server generated challenge grids.
Set Defaults
OK Cancel Apply

The **Minimum grid size** defines the smallest size grids that users can have.

If you are using the MyID Authentication Server for deviceless logons through an API, you can use the **Grid bitmap size** option to specify the default dimensions of the PNG image that is displayed on the client to suit the location you are displaying the image.

Note: The Grid bitmap size option is relevant only if you are using an API call to get the grid; for example, using GetPinGridToken. If you are instead using the MyID Authentication Server for deviceless logons through the IdP, the IdP manages the rendering size of the grid to ensure that it fits well within the overall layout of the page, overriding any user-defined bitmap size.

You can also customize the grid colors used to display the squares in each quadrant of the grid.

When challenge grids are delivered using email, the **Send email grids as HTML** option defines whether challenge grids are generated in plain text or as HTML.

To return the Grid Quadrant Colours to the default colors, click the Set Defaults button.



5.2.13 Phrase tab

This tab configures the standard Phrase policy settings.

MyID PSM 8	& MFA Properti	es			×	
Certificates General F Grid Options Policy So	RADIUS Alerts 3 Phrase One	Remediation	Licence Schedule IbiKey OTP		olicy	
Minimu	um Length: um Questions: age prefix text:	6 🔹 char 2 🔹 Phrase question	rs per answe	er]	
#	Question - What	is				
1	your Codeword					
2	your mother maid	en				
3	your favourite sp	orts teams				
4	your favourite su	oject at school				
5	your spouses mid	dle name				
Use multiple questions per login Add						
		ОК	Cance	Appl	у	

The **Minimum Length** sets the minimum number of characters that a user must enter for each answer.

The **Minimum Questions** setting allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of questions that a user must answer to be fully provisioned for phrase authentication. Phrase authentication allows administrators to create multiple questions and allow a user to select a subset of those questions to answer.

The **Message prefix text** precedes all Phrase challenges which are sent to mobile devices.

By default, the only question is your Codeword; this is to cater for auto-provisioning where a user is provided with a random dictionary word to get them started. It is not recommended to change the first challenge question. To modify and add new Phrase challenge questions, click **Add**.

Enable the **Use multiple questions per login** option to make Phrase randomly ask for letters from answers to multiple questions instead of picking random letters from a single answer. This option can increase security but may make it harder for users to login.



5.2.14 One Time Code tab

This tab configures the standard One Time Code policy settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properti	es			×
General RADIUS Alerts	SMS Delivery Remediation Time Code Yu	Licence Schedule IbiKey OTP	Grid Pa	MyID CMS attern Policy nticator App
Policy Settings Require static PIN / Minimum OTP Length: Minimum PIN Length: DIN (Baseward	6 🗘 digit			
PIN / Password Position: Message prefix text: The Message prefix te Text / Email message user or an indication of e.g. "Acme Inc. remote	and can be used what the PINpas	as an introdu s code is for	uction to	the
	ОК	Cancel		Apply

One Time Code (OTC) can be used as a single or Multi-Factor Authentication solution. To enforce two-factor authentication with OTC, enable the **Require PIN / AD Password** option; if this option is enabled, the user must enter a PIN code or Password along with a One Time PIN (OTP) when authenticating. This option is typically disabled when OTC is only being used to validate OTPs and static data such as passwords are being verified elsewhere, or not at all.

The **Minimum OTP Length** option sets the minimum number of digits allowed in an OTP code generated. The actual number of digits is set on a per-user basis but cannot be lower than this number.

The **Minimum PIN Length** option allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of digits in a user's static PIN code. This length is ignored when using Active Directory passwords in place of a PIN code.

The **PIN / Password position** option dictates where users must enter the static PIN / Password in relation to the OTP. The default setting is Any.

The Message prefix text that precedes all OTC token challenges.



5.2.15 YubiKey OTP tab

This tab configures the YubiKey One Time PIN policy settings.

MyID PSM & MFA P	roperties					×
FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Grid Options Phras		mediation	Sched	lule	Delivery Grid Patte Authentic	em Policy
Require	Key OTP Yubico Online PIN / AD Pas N Length: 4	sword	tion digits			
		ОК	Ca	ancel		Apply

MyID MFA supports both programmed and native (non-reprogrammed) YubiKey devices. In order to validate non-reprogrammed YubiKey devices, the MyID Server requires access to the Yubico servers hosted in the cloud. **Enable Yubico Online Authentication** to pass non-reprogrammed YubiKey OTPs to the Yubico servers in the cloud.

YubiKey OTPs can be used as a single or Multi-Factor Authentication solution. To enforce two-factor authentication with your YubiKey OTP, enable the **Require PIN / AD Password** option; when this is enabled, the user must enter a PIN code or Password along with their YubiKey One Time PIN (OTP) when authenticating. This option is typically disabled when OTC is only being used to validate OTPs and static data such as a password is being verified elsewhere, or not at all.

The **Minimum PIN Length** option allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of digits in a user's static PIN code. This length is ignored when using Active Directory passwords in place of a PIN code.

The **PIN / Password position** option dictates where users must enter the static PIN / Password in relation to the OTP. The default setting is Any.



5.2.16 FIDO2 tab

This tab configures the FIDO2 Passkey settings.

MyID PSI	VI & N	/IFA Pr	opertie	S						\times
· ·									Authenti	cator App
General FIDO2		DIUS CMS	Alerts Certifica		nediatio SMTF				Grid Patte Delivery	em Policy Licence
Settir										
_	-	synced	l passke	vs				(• fic	Jo.
			-bound (eys			,	ALLIAN	ICE
	⊡ s	ave W	indows p	bassw	ord wit	h cn	edentia	al		
	N	lanage	the Win	dows	passw	ord				
Allow	ed De	vices								
			e followi	ng de	vice ty	pes:				
	ACS ACS Allthe Andro Arcul	FIDO A FIDO A enticato pid Auth us FID(uthentic	ator ator (aming or with y Can	Card g BLE I n Safety d [P71]	FIDC)2 Allth		ator for Wi	~
					ОК		С	ancel		Apply

MyID MFA supports both FIDO2 synced and device-bound passkeys. Users need to be provisioned and enabled for FIDO2 support individually.

Enable the **Allow synced passkeys** option to enable support for synced passkeys. Synced passkeys are typically installed on mobile devices.

Enable the **Allow device-bound passkeys** option to enable support for device-bound passkeys. Device-bound passkeys are typically separate hardware tokens such as those provided by Yubico.

Enable the **Save Windows password with credential** option to bind the user's Active Directory password with the user's FIDO credential for passwordless login. This password is not stored with the MyID MFA password vault.

Enable the **Manage the Windows password** option to allow MyID MFA to create a random, 32-byte token as the user's Windows password, and then secure and associate the Windows password token with a FIDO device-bound passkey. The Windows password therefore can be recovered only when a successful FIDO authentication takes place. If you enable this option, do not set the **Randomise AD Passwords every** *x* **days** setting in the Domain Properties dialog.

Note: If you have applications that requires the user to input their Windows password manually, do not enable this option as the Windows password token is never visible to the user.

For more information on managing Windows passwords using FIDO, see section 3.7.1, *Windows Managed Password for FIDO credentials*.



5.2.16.1 Known issues

IKB-440 - Offline logon caches only the last successful FIDO authentication method

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, you can use only the last successful FIDO authentication method. If a user logs in with biometric FIDO before going offline, only biometric works offline, and similarly for non-biometric logon. Even if the user has previously logged in with both devices, only the most recent one is cached when working offline. This affects physical FIDO authentication devices only.

IKB-441 – Unable to carry out an offline logon after using a temporary access code

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, if you use a temporary access code before going offline, all cached credentials are cleared, preventing you from carrying out an offline logon with either biometric or non-biometric FIDO devices, even if you have successfully logged in with FIDO devices before.



5.2.17 MyID CMS tab

This tab configures the MyID CMS settings to allow for integration between the MyID MFA/PSM Server and the MyID CMS Server.

MyID PSM & MFA Prope	rties	×
General RADIUS Ale	One Time Code YubiKey (ts Remediation Scheo tificates SMTP Delivery	dule Grid Pattern Policy
Intergration Settings		
CMS Server URL: CMS Callback URL: Client ID:	https://myid/web.oauth https://myid/MFABroke	
Client Scope:	myid.notications.basic	
Client Secret:	••••••	••••••
	ОК Са	ancel Apply

You require the following information to complete the configuration:

• **CMS Server URL** – the MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service URL. For example:

```
https://myid/web.oauth2
```

• CMS Callback URL - the MyID CMS MFA Broker Service URL.

For example:

https://myid/MFABroker

• Client ID - the MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate.

```
For example:
```

myid.notifications

• Client Scope – the MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate. For example:

```
myid.notifications.basic
```

• Client Secret – the MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate. For example:

```
4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d
```



5.3 Domain settings

The MyID Domain settings are a set of domain specific configuration options that apply to all MyID servers in the forest and are not per-user settings. To access the domain settings:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the **Domains** node.
- 2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



The Domain Properties dialog opens.

See section 5.3.1, Domain Properties dialog for details.



5.3.1 Domain Properties dialog

The Domain Properties dialog allows administrators to control various Active Directory specific options.

Domains Properties	×
Active Directory	
AD Options	
Enable MyID Password Vault	
Enforce random password when changed (Requires DC Agent)	
Randomise AD Passwords every: 0 🖨 days Run Now	
Require private mobile phone numbers	
AD Passthrough Authentication	
Enable Active Directory Passthrough Authentication	
Browse	
AD Custom Attribute Lookups	
Additional Usemame:	
Secondary email address:	
OK Cancel Apply	



Enable MyID Password Vault enables the MyID Password Vault. The MyID Password Vault is a secure storage location protected with AES 256-bit asymmetric encryption with certificates. The password vault stores user passwords to allow for Passwordless logons to Windows and other applications. This feature can be used in conjunction with the Windows Desktop Agent with Passwordless logons enabled. The Password Vault is disabled by default and must be explicitly enabled.

Randomise AD Passwords every *x* **days** enables the MyID Server to manage user passwords automatically by regularly setting them to a highly secure random value . The random passwords are kept secure because the users never know what they are, and they constantly change. This feature must be used only in conjunction with MyID agents that support Passwordless logons, such as the Windows Desktop Agent with Passwordless logons enabled.

To enable this feature, specify the number of days until the passwords must be randomly changed. If you set this value to 0, the feature is disabled.

Note: If you set this option, do not set the **Manage the Windows password** option in the global settings.

Note: To enable this option for individual users, you must either enable the **Randomise AD Passwords every** *x* **days** option as you add them, or manually enable the **Randomise AD Passwords every** *x* **days** option for each user in the user properties dialog. See section 5.7.3, Adding a new MyID user account and section 5.7.11.4, Managing an Active Directory user's password randomization.

You can also enable **Enforce random password when changed**, which prevents a user's password from being reset/changed to a non-random password. If it is not enforced, the password reset is allowed, and the new password can be used until the next randomization schedule. The block is done directly at the Domain Controller by the Domain Controller Agent which must be installed separately on all Domain Controllers.

To force password randomization of all accounts, click **Run Now**. This causes the Password Policy Agent to run the password randomization task within the next 15 minutes.

To ensure that all user mobile phone numbers are kept private, enable **Require private mobile phone numbers**. This setting ensures that mobile numbers are encrypted instead of using the clear text default mobile phone Active Directory field.



AD Passthrough Authentication allows logon attempts to be passed directly to Active Directory for logon processing if a user has not been provisioned for MFA. AD Passthrough Authentication is only permitted for user accounts that are a member of a specified AD group and is disabled by default. To enable AD Passthrough Authentication,

- 1. Enable the Enable Active Directory Passthrough Authentication option.
- 2. Click Browse.
- 3. Select the Active Directory group that contains the user accounts which are permitted to use AD Passthrough Authentication.

AD Custom Attribute Lookups enables MyID to use custom LDAP attributes on a user account when looking up a user account name or secondary email address.

The Additional Username option may be useful to locate a user account using an employee number instead of an Active Directory account name. If the employee number is stored in **extensionAttribute1** in Active Directory, you can configure MyID to also look in the specified attribute. The custom field is used as a secondary addition to the standard Username or UPN, if an account match is found using the standard Username, the custom LDAP field is not searched.

The **Secondary email address** option can be used to locate a secondary email address for a user account. The secondary email address can be used in the authentication provisioning wizards for sending welcome emails to.

To enable a custom attribute lookup, enable **Additional Username** or **Secondary email address**, and select an LDAP attribute from the list that MyID should search.



5.4 Applications

Applications are all IdP published services and websites that require authentication. MyID includes three preconfigured applications: the Self Service Portal, the Web Admin Portal, and the Windows Desktop agent service. To access the applications settings:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Applications node.
- 2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



You can access the following properties dialogs:

- · Applications Properties
- Self Service Portal Properties
- Web Management Portal Properties
- Windows Desktop Agent Properties
- OpenID Connect application properties
- · Client Credential applications properties
- SAML 2.0 application properties



5.4.1 Applications Properties

The Applications Properties dialog allows administrators to control the Identity Provider (IdP) server options. These properties apply to all MyID IdP servers in the forest and are not peruser settings.

5.4.1.1 Identity Provider tab

Applications Properties		×
Identity Provider Signin	g Certificates SAML 2.0	
Server Settings		
IdP Host:	server	
IdP Domain:	authlogicsdemo.com	
TCP Port:	14443 🔶	
OpenID Connect Info	mation	
Authority URI:	https://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/idp	
Multiple DNS Domain	IS	
Enabled	^	
	Y	
	OK Cancel Apply	

The IdP Host is the DNS name of the MyID Authentication Server (or servers).

The IdP Domain is the domain name of the MyID Authentication Server.

The **IdP Host** and **IdP Domain** are combined to create the DNS Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for accessing the MyID Authentication Server from web based clients.

While the DNS FQDN must resolve to the IP address of the MyID Authentication Server, it does not have to be the actual name of the MyID Authentication Server. If you have multiple authentication servers for high availability, you must set the **IdP Host** and **IdP Domain** to create a virtual name that either resolves to all authentication servers, or to a network load balancer virtual IP address.

The MyID Authentication Server operates on the HTTPs protocol and is bound to the port specified within the **TCP Port** option. By default, the **TCP Port** is 14443; however, you are recommended to use port 443 with a matching trusted SSL certificate. You must configure the certificate and TCP binding separately on each authentication server in your IIS.

In the **OpenID Connect Information** section, the **Authority URI** is dynamically built based on the **IdP Host**, **IdP Domain**, and **TCP Port** settings.

If the same IdP is used with multiple DNS domains, for example if there are multiple DNS domain names associated with a Microsoft Azure tenant, you must enable **Multiple DNS Domains**, and list the domains.

If you are using only one domain, you are not required to add it to the list.





	5.4.1.2	Signing	Certificates	tab
--	---------	---------	--------------	-----

Applications Properties	Х
Identity Provider Signing Certificates SAML 2.0	
Primary IdP Signing Certificate	
Friendly Name: Authlogics IdP Signing Cert (CN=*.authlogicsdemo.	
Expiry Date: 07/02/2035 11:06:26	
Certificate Information Browse	
Secondary IdP Signing Certificate	
Friendly Name:	
Expiry Date:	
Certificate Information Remove Browse	
Certificate Management	
Swap the Primary and Secondary Certificates.	
Swap	
OK Cancel Apply	

You must have at least one IdP signing certificate. You can configure a Secondary IdP Signing Certificate with a different expiry date to the Primary IdP Signing Certificate to allow for certificate rollover without service interruption.

IdP signing certificates do not have to be publicly trusted as they are not SSL certs; they are shared with application service providers during app setup.

To obtain the Base 64 formatted copy of the certificate, click the copy icon .

To view information about a certificate, click Certificate Information.





5.4.1.3 SAML 2.0 tab

Applications Properties		×		
Identity Provider Signing	Certificates SAML 2.0			
Identity Provider (IdP)				
Description:	MyID Identity Provider			
Issuer URI:	um:uri:serverauthlogicsdemocom			
Entity ID URI:				
um:uri:serverauthlog	icsdemocom 🗸			
Single Sign On Servi	ce URL:			
https://server.authlo	gicsdemo.com:14443/idp/SAML/SingleS			
Single Logout Servic	e URL:			
https://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/idp/SAML/SingleL				
Artifact Resolution S	ervice URL:			
https://server.authlo	gicsdemo.com:14443/idp/SAML/Artifact	F 🕒		
IdP Metadata URL:				
https://server.authlo	gicsdemo.com:14443/idp/SAML/Export!			
	OK Cancel	Apply		

On the **SAML 2.0** tab, you can enter a **Description** for your MyID IdP Server.

The Issuer Uri must be a unique value. By default it is configured in the following format:

urn:uri:<server-host><server-domain-with-no-dots>

Where:

- <server-host> is the IdP Host.
- <server-domain-with-no-dots> is the IdP Domain without dots.

For information on setting the IdP Host and IdP Domain, see section 5.4.1.1, Identity Provider tab.

If you have configured multiple domains, multiple **Entity ID URI** values are dynamically created; you can view these in the drop-down list. For each domain, a unique Issuer URI is created in the following format:

urn:uri:{server-host}{server-domain-with-no-dots}:{mult-domain-name-withno-dots}

Where:

- <server-host> is the IdP Host.
- <server-domain-with-no-dots> is the IdP Domain without dots.
- <mult-domain-name-with-no-dots> is a domain from your Multiple DNS Domains list.

For information on setting the IdP Host, IdP Domain, and multiple DNS domains, see section *5.4.1.1*, *Identity Provider tab*.





The URLs to access the Single Sign On Service, Single Logout Service, Artifact Resolution Service, and the IdP Metadata are displayed for your information. You can click the button next to each URL to copy it to your clipboard.



5.4.2 Self Service Portal Properties

The Self Service Portals properties dialog contains the customization options for the Self Service Portal. The MyID Authentication Server includes a user Self Service Portal where users can perform various common administrative tasks themselves such as register a new MFA device, change their Grid pattern, Phrase answers, static YubiKey and OTC PINs and reset their Active Directory password and update their mobile/cellular phone number. The Web Management Portal provides basic administration and operational capabilities suited to helpdesk personnel.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Self Service Portal application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the Applications node.
- 2. Highlight the **Self Service Portal**.



3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.



5.4.2.1 Internal Authentication tab

Self Service Portal Prop	perties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	Settings OpenID Connect	
Primary	Windows Authentication	on 🗌 Certificate	
Primary Options	reset via Email 🗌 Allow	password reset via SMS/Text	
Secondary	_	_	
✓ Passkey ✓ Push	✓ YubiKey OTP ✓ One Time Code	Grid Pattern	
Secondary Options			
Allow deviceles	s 🗌 Allow any selecte	ed user configured technology	
	ОК	Cancel Apply	r

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

If you have only a PSM license installed, the Self Service Portal can still issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the **Password** must be set as the **Primary** logon technology, and either **Allow password reset via Email** or **Allow password reset via SMS/Text**must be enabled.





5.4.2.2 External Authentication tab

Self Service Portal Pro	perties			×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	Settings	OpenID Connect	
External Authentication	on			
External Identities li	nked with this Application:			
	ОК	Ca	incel <u>A</u> p	oly

The External Identities linked with this application allow users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.2.3 Settings tab

Self Service Portal Pro	perties			\times
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	Settings	OpenID Connect	
General Settings		14	427	
Email URL: shttps://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/ The Email URL is the address that is embedded into onboarding welcome emails which are sent to users when they are provisioned for a new account or MFA technology. This URL should resolve to the Authentication Server and must match the port, DNS name and SSL certificate details in IIS.				
Allowed User Action	าร			
Unlock AD Ac	count			
Reset AD Pase	sword			
🗹 Auto unloc	ck AD Account on passw	vord reset		
Change Mobile	e / Cellular phone numbe	r		
Add Token de	vices Remove	e Token dev	ices	
	ОК	Ca	ncel Appl	у

The **Email URL** must be an accessible and resolvable web-based address that provides users access to the Self Service Portal hosted on the Authentication Server. The default HTTPS port (SSL) for the SSP is TCP:14443, although additional ports can be configured within IIS. A reverse proxy or SSL VPN device may be used to provide connectivity to the portal if required.

Administrators can enable or disable the user's ability to perform the following actions though the Self Service Portal (depending on the installed product license):

- Unlock AD Account Allows users to unlock their Active Directory Account.
- Reset AD Password Allows users to reset their Active Directory Password.
 - Auto unlock AD Account on password reset Auto unlocks the user's Active
 Directory Account when their password is reset.
- Change Mobile / Cellular phone number Allows users to change their mobile/cellular phone number.
- Add Token devices Allows users to add token devices.
- Remove Token devices Allows users to remove token devices.





5.4.2.4 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Self Service Portal Pro	perties			×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	Settings	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provider (Id	P)			
Client ID:	internal.selfservice			
Client Secret:	•••••	•••••	•••••	
Relying Party (RP)				
Grant Type:	Code		~	
Scopes:	✓ profile ☐ email ☐ phone			
Redirect URI:	https://server.authlogicso	demo.com:	14443/ssp/si	
Logout URI:	https://server.authlogicso	demo.com:	14443/ssp/si	
	ОК	Са	ncel Apply	/

Through this, you can specify the Self Service Portal's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.



5.4.3 Web Management Portal Properties

The Web Management Portal application properties contain the customization options for the Web Management Portal. The MyID Authentication Server includes a user Web Management Portal where administrators and web operators can perform basic administration and operational capabilities suited to helpdesk personnel.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Web Management Portal application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight the Web Management Portal.

📀 MylD Management Console		-	
<u> <u> </u> </u>	Help		- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙇 📰 🗟 🔢 🖬			
📔 MyID PSM & MFA	Applications All configured Applications	Actions	
> Domains > III Realms	0 0 0	Applications	•
Applications	Self Service Web Windows	Add Application	
 External Identities Roles 	Portal Management Deskto Portal	Refresh Applications	
> 🥂 noies	POTIBI	View	•
		New Window from Here	
		Export List	
		Properties	
		Help	
		Web Management Portal	•
		Enable	
		S Disable	
		Properties	
		Help	
	JL		

3. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



5.4.3.1 Internal Authentication tab

Web Management Portal I	Properties		×
Internal Authentication Ext	emal Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Primary	Vindows Authenticatio	on 🗌 Certifical	te
Primary Options	t via Email 🗌 Allow j	password reset via S	MS/Text
Secondary ☑ Passkey ☑ Push	 ✓ YubiKey OTP ✓ One Time Code 	☑ Grid Patter ☑ Phrase	m
Secondary Options	Allow any selecte	ed user configured te	chnology
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

If you have only a PSM license installed, the Web Management Portal can still issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the **Password** must be set as the **Primary** logon technology, and either **Allow password reset via Email** or **Allow password reset via SMS/Text**must be enabled.

Web Management Por	tal Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
External Authentication	n		
External Identities lin	nked with this Application:		_
	ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply

5.4.3.2 External Authentication tab

The External Identities linked with this application allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.3.3 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Web Management Po	rtal Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provider (Id	P)		
Client ID:	internal.webmanagement		
Client Secret:	•••••	•••••	
Relying Party (RP)			
Grant Type:	Code	~	
Scopes:	profile mail phone		
Redirect URI:	https://server.authlogicso	demo.com:14443/admin	
Logout URI:	https://server.authlogicso	demo.com:14443/admin	
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

Through this, you can specify the Web Management Portal's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.



5.4.4 Windows Desktop Agent Properties

The MFA Windows Desktop Agent tabs contain the customization options for the MyID MFA Windows Desktop Agent.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Windows Desktop Agent application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight the Windows Desktop Web Sign-in.

O MyID Management Console		- 🗆 ×
File Action View Window	Help	- & ×
🗢 🄿 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬 🖬		
MyID PSM & MFA	Applications All configured Applications	Actions
> 📴 Domains > 🛺 Realms	0 0 0	Applications 🔺
Applications	Complexitions Complexitions Complexitions Complexitions Complexitions Complexitions Service P Manageme. Monageme. Service P Manageme. Service P	😿 Add Application
> 👉 External Identities		Refresh Applications
> 😹 Koles		View 🕨
		New Window from Here
		Export List
		Properties
		👔 Help
		Windows Desktop Web Sign-in
		Enable
		S Disable
		Properties Properties
		Help
	1	

3. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



5.4.4.1 Internal Authentication tab

Windows Desktop Web S	ign-in Properties		×
Internal Authentication	ternal Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Primary			
Password	Windows Authenticatio	n Certificate	
Primary Options	et via Email 🗌 Allow p	password reset via SMS/	Text
Secondary			
Passkey	YubiKey OTP	Grid Pattern	
Push	One Time Code	Phrase	
Secondary Options			
Allow deviceless	Allow any selecte	d user configured techno	ology
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

If you have only a PSM license installed, you can use the Window Desktop Agent to issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the **Password** must be set as the **Primary** logon technology, and either **Allow password reset via Email** or **Allow password reset via SMS/Text**must be enabled.

Windows Desktop Wel	b Sign-in Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
External Authentication	n		
External Identities lin	nked with this Application:		_
	OK	Cancel	Apply

5.4.4.2 External Authentication tab

The **External Identities linked with this application** option allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.4.3 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Windows Desktop Web Sign-in Properties			
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provider (IdP)			
Client ID:	internal.desktop		
Client Secret:	•••••	•••••	•••
Relying Party (RP)			
Grant Type:	Code		~
Scopes:	profile mail phone		
Redirect URI:	http://127.0.0.1/pkce		
Logout URI:	http://127.0.0.1/pkce		
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

Through this, you can specify the Windows Desktop Agent's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.


5.4.5 OpenID Connect application properties

The applications properties dialog of a OpenID Connect application allows administrators to control the OpenID Connect application. For more information on adding a OpenID Connect application, see section *5.5.1*, *Creating an OpenID Connect application*.

To access the application properties of an OpenID Connect application:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight your OpenID Connect application.



3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.



5.4.5.1 Internal Authentication tab

My OpenID Connect App	Properties		×
Internal Authentication E	xternal Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Primary	Windows Authenticatio	on 🗌 Certificate	
Primary Options	et via Email 🗌 Allow	password reset via SMS	/Text
Secondary Passkey Push	YubiKey OTP One Time Code	Grid Pattem	
Secondary Options	Allow any selecte	ed user configured techn	ology
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

My OpenID Connect A	App Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
External Authentication			
	ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply

5.4.5.2 External Authentication tab

The **External Identities linked with this application** option allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.5.3 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

My OpenID Connect A	App Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provider (Id	P)		
Client ID:	MyOpenIDConnectApp		
Client Secret:	•••••	•••••	•••
Relying Party (RP)			
Grant Type:	Code		~
Scopes:	profile mail phone		
Redirect URI:	https://myapp.server.com	n/redirect-uri	
Logout URI:	https://myapp.server.com	n/logout	
	ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply

Through this, you can change the OpenID Connect application's Client Secret.

You can also specify the OpenID Connect application's **Grant Type**, the **Scopes** for the relying party trust, the **Redirect URI**, and the **Logout URI**.



5.4.6 Client Credential applications properties

The applications properties dialog of a client credential application allows administrators to control the client credential application. For more information on adding a client credential application, see section *5.5.2*, *Creating a client credential application*.

To access the application properties of an client credential application:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight your client credential application.



3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.



5.4.6.1 Internal Authentication tab

My Client Credential Ap	p Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Primary] Windows Authenticatio	on 🗌 Certificat	e
	set via Email 🗌 Allow	password reset via S	MS/Text
Secondary Passkey	YubiKey OTP	Grid Patter	n
Push	One Time Code	Phrase	
Secondary Options	Allow any selecte	ed user configured te	chnology
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

Note: Authentication configuration is irrelevant for client credential applications.

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

My Client Credential A	pp Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
External Authentication			
	ОК	Cancel	Apply

5.4.6.2 External Authentication tab

Note: Authentication configuration is irrelevant for client credential applications.





5.4.6.3 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

My Client Credential A	App Properties		×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provider (Id	P)		
Client ID:	MyClientCredentialApp		
Client Secret:	••••••	•••••	•••
Relying Party (RP)			
Grant Type:	Client Credential		~
Scopes:	✓ rest_api ☐ rest_api_external		
Roles:	Administrator		~
	ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply

Through this, you can change the client credential application's **Client Secret**.

You can also specify the client credential application's **Grant Type**, the **Scopes** for the relying party trust, and the **Roles**.



5.4.7 SAML 2.0 application properties

The applications properties dialog of a SAML 2.0 application allows administrators to control the SAML 2.0 application. For more information on adding a SAML 2.0 application, see section 5.5.3, *Creating a SAML 2.0 application*.

To access the application properties of a SAML 2.0 application:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight your SAML 2.0 application.



3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.



5.4.7.1 Internal Authentication tab

My SAML 2.0 App Prop	perties	×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims	Mapping
Primary	Windows Authentication	3
Primary Options	reset via Email 🗌 Allow password reset via Sł	MS/Text
Secondary Passkey	YubiKey OTP Grid Patter	1
Push	One Time Code	
Secondary Options	s 🔄 Allow any selected user configured tec	hnology
	OK Cancel	<u>A</u> pply

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 5.1.0 and **Enable Passwordless MFA** was not selected, **Password** is automatically selected as the primary logon technology.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.



If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.

If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.



If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

5.4.7.2 External Authentication

My SAML 2.0 App Properties				×
Internal Authentication External	Authentication	SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping	
External Authentication				
External Identities linked with	this Application:			
	OK	Cano	cel <u>A</u> pp	ly

The **External Identities linked with this application** option allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.7.3 SAML 2.0 tab

My SAML 2.0 App Pro	perties			×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping	
Service Provider (SI	P)			
Description:				
Entity ID URI:	loadbalancer-9.siroe.com	1		
Assertion URL:	https://loadbalancer-9.si	roe.com:344	3/federation	
Logout URL:	https://loadbalancer-9.si	roe.com:344	3/federation	
Artifact URL:				
NameID Format:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAMI	L:1.1:nameid-	format:u 🗸	
Authn Context:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAM	L:2.0:ac:class	ses:unsr 🗸	
SP Certificates:	CN=loadbalancer-9.siroe	.com, O=siroe	e.com 🗸	
	Add Rem	ove	Cert Info	
Want Signed	Auth Request 📃 Want	t Signed Logo	out Request	
Sign Assertion	to SP 📃 Sign	Logout Resp	onse to SP	
	ОК	Cano	cel Apply	y

The SAML 2.0 tab allows you to change the SAML settings of the application after you have created the application. The options are the same as when you create the application, except that you cannot import a metadata file; see section 5.5.3, *Creating a SAML 2.0 application* for details. of these options.

5.4.7.4 Claims Mapping tab

My SAML 2.0 App Prop	perties			\times
Internal Authentication	External Authentication	SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping	
Subject				
NameID property:	MailAddress		~	
Attribute Statement				
SAML Attribute:			~	
● User ○ LD/	AP	~	Add	
SAML Attribu	te User	Property		
	OK	Can	cel <u>A</u> pp	bly



The NameID is mapped during the application creation.

You can add any other claims required by the application on this tab.

To add a claims sample mapping:

1. Select a SAML Attribute from the list or type in a value for a custom SAML attribute.

My SAML 2.0 App Prop	perties	×
Internal Authentication	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims Mapping	J
Subject		
NameID property:	MailAddress ~	
Attribute Statement		
SAML Attribute:		
● User ○ LD/	AP Anonymous Authentication AuthenticationInstant	
SAML Attribu	tte AuthenticationMethod AuthorizationMethod AuthorizationDecision CookiePath Country DateOfBirth DenyOnlyPrimarySid DenyOnlyPrimarySid DenyOnlyWindowsDeviceGroup Dns Das Email Expiration Expired Gender GivenName GroupSid Hash HomePhone IsPersistent Locality MobilePhone Name NameIdentifier OtherPhone PostalCode ✓	зły

2. Select either a user property or an LDAP field to which you want to map the attribute.





emal Authentication	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims N	lapping
Subject		
		_
NameID property:	MailAddress	~
Attribute Statement		
SAML Attribute:	Sumame	~
● User ○ LDA	AP Add	
	AccountGuid	
SAML Attribu	AccountName Description	
	DomainDns	
	ExternalUser FirstName	
	Groups	
	LastName	
	MailAddress MailAddress2	
	MaliAddress2	
	Realm	
	UPN	
	ValidFrom ValidTo	
SAML 2.0 App Prop	OK Cancel	Арр
mal Authentication	perties	
mal Authentication	perties	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property:	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims N	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property:	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims N	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement	External Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims M MailAddress	
emal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
emal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute: User O LDA	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	App Mapping
emal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
emal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
mal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	
emal Authentication Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	Derties External Authentication SAML 2.0 MailAddress Sumame Ap LastName Add	

3. Click Add.

The mapping configuration is now complete and is visible in the list.





		Claims Mapping
MailAddress		~
		~
	~	Add
User	Property	
LastNa	ame	

You can add multiple claim mappings to a single application.

To disable a mapping, deselect it in the list.

To test the IdP SAML configuration, you can use the following demo site:

sptest.iamshowcase.com

The site displays the information received through SAML attributes. The site does not support testing of SAML signing.



5.5 Adding new applications

Additional websites and services can be added to the IdP Applications. To add a new application:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Applications node.



2. Click Add Application, in the Actions pane.



- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Select the **App Type**, provide a descriptive **Name** for the application, and set the application to be **Enabled**.



MyID Applications support applications of type:

- OpenID Applications .
 See section 5.5.1, Creating an OpenID Connect application.
- Client credential applications. Seesection *5.5.2*, *Creating a client credential application*.
- SAML 2.0 Applications. See section 5.5.3, Creating a SAML 2.0 application.
- MyID CMS.
- Microsoft 365.

For more information on adding a Microsoft 365 application, see the *Adding the Microsoft 365 application* section of the *Federation with Microsoft 365* guide.

Follow the relevant instructions for the type of application that you want to add.



5.5.1 Creating an OpenID Connect application

📀 Add Application Wizard		×
Application Information General information for the	e new Application.	
Provide a name and select th setup a generic OpenID con	he type of Application. You can choose a built in Application, on nect or SAML 2.0 Application.	or
Арр Туре:	OpenID Application ~	
Name:	My OpenID Connect App	
	✓ Enabled	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ncel

1. Click Next.

2. Set the Grant Type to Code.

O Add Application Wizard		×
OpenID Connect Relying F Enter the RP details for My (R
Relying Party (RP) Grant Type: Scopes:		
Redirect URI: Logout URI:		
	< Back Next >	Cancel

3. Enter the Relying Party trust details.





Connect Relying the RP details for My		Ş
Relying Party (RP)	details	
Grant Type:	Code ~	
Scopes:	profile mail phone	
Redirect URI:	https://myapp.server.com/redirect uri	
Logout URI:	https://myapp.server.com/logout	

4. Click Next.

Add Application Wiz	ard	×
Authentication Option Select the required a	ns uthentication options.	Q
Primary Password	Windows Authentication	
Primary Options	reset via Email 📃 Allow password reset via SMS/Te	ext
Secondary		
Passkey	VubiKey OTP Grid Pattem	
Push	One Time Code Phrase	
Secondary Options Allow devicele	ss Allow any selected user configured technology	
	< Back Next >	Cancel



5. You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.

If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.



If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.

If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

6. Click Next.

📀 Add App	plication Wizard		×
	e configuration? uready to apply the	settings?	
OpenID C	Application Wizard I Connect App Applica t to apply the config		r
	-OpenID Connect	Summary	
	Client ID:	MyOpenIDConnectApp	
	Client Secret:	os9SDdp98MOykxBeBzCvsW9Tkt3b57vab	
		ke a copy of the Client Secret now as it will not be a gain after the wizard is complete.	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	Cancel

7. Optionally, you can type a new Client ID.



8. Make a copy of the **Client Secret** for integration with the calling application.

This is necessary for later authentication and is not available outside of this page. If you lose this, you can edit the application to change the **Client Secret**. See section *5.4.5.3*, *OpenID Connect tab*.

9. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard			×
Add Application Configuration Authentication Server is updating the Applica	tion data.		
Update Progress			
Adding new Application Done			^
			~
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>F</u> inish	Cancel

10. Click Finish.



Your application has now been configured.



5.5.2	Creating a client credential application
	Application Information General information for the new Application.
	Provide a name and select the type of Application. You can choose a built in Application, or setup a generic OpenID connect or SAML 2.0 Application.
	App Type: OpenID Application
	Display Name: My Client Credential App
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 1. Click Next.
- 2. Set the Grant Type to Client Credential.





📀 Add Appl	ication Wizard		×
	o nnect Relying P e RP details for My ('arty (RP) Client Credential App.	
	Relying Party (RP)	details	
	Grant Type:	Client Credential ~	
	Scopes:	rest_api rest_api_external	
	Roles:	Operator ~	
		< Back Next >	Cancel

3. Enter the Relying Party trust details.

OpenID Connect Relying Enter the RP details for My		×
Relying Party (RF Grant Type:	?) details	
Scopes:	rest_api rest_api_external	
Roles:	Administrator ~	
	< Back Next >	Cancel





For most server-to-server operations, set **Scopes** to rest_api and **Roles** to Administrator.

4. Click Next.

📀 Add App	olication Wizard	×
	e configuration? I ready to apply the	settings?
	Add Application Wi nt Credential App Ap	zard has gathered all the information required to add the new My oplication.
Click	Next to apply the o	configuration changes.
	OpenID Connect	Summary
	Client ID:	MyClientCredentialApp
	Client Secret:	uo6gJUqWrzTpp30i3YLn0L9bPUFEog7hqI
		te a copy of the Client Secret now as it will not be again after the wizard is complete.
		< Back Next > Cancel

- 5. Optionally, you can type a new Client ID.
- 6. Make a copy of the **Client Secret** for integration with the calling application.

This is necessary for later authentication and is not available outside of this page. If you lose this, you can edit the application to change the **Client Secret**. See section 5.4.6.3, *OpenID Connect tab*.



7. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard		\times
Add Application Configuration Authentication Server is updating the Appli	cation data.	
Update Progress		
Adding new Application Done		^
		¥
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

8. Click Finish.

Image: Price Action View Window Help Image: Price Action View Window MFA Image: Price Action View Windows My SAML 2.0 My OpenID Image: Price Action View Windows My SAML 2.0 My OpenID Image: Price Action View Web Image: Price Price Price Price Point Manageme Desktop W App Connect Connect Connect App Connect Connect App Connect Con	MyID Management Console		- 🗆 ×
Wh/ID PSM & MFA 	· ·	lp	_ 8 ×
 □ Domains □ Builtin ○ Company Groups ○ Company Users ○ Germany ○ Germany	🗢 🄿 📶 🖬 🗟 🗖		
	My/D PSM & MFA Domains Domains Builtin G Company Groups G Company Users G England G France G England G Germany G Italy G Scotland G Spain G Wales G Managed Service Accoun G Microsoft Exchange Secur G Microsoft	Self Service Portal Manageme Desktop W Manageme Desktop W	Applications Application Refresh Application View New Window from Here Export List Properties Help My Client Credential App Collecte Collecte Rename Properties
	< >		

Your application has now been configured.



5.5.3 Creating a SAML 2.0 application

🧿 Add Application Wizard	×					
Application Information General information for the new Application.						
	e type of Application. You can choose a built in Application, or nect or SAML 2.0 Application.					
App Type:	SAML 2.0 Application					
Name:	My SAML 2.0 App					
	Enabled					
		_				
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel					

1. Click Next.

Add Application Wizard	×
SAML 2.0 Application Settings User Account NameID mapping and SAML Metadata import.	R
Select the User Account property to be provided to My SAML 2.0 App for the Nar and import a SAML Metadata export file (optional) to create the SP configuration.	neID claim
NameID property: MailAddress Metadata Import: Import	~
< Back Next >	Cancel

2. Select the user property that contains the information required by the SAML 2.0 application for the **NameID** property.

The **NameID** is normally the main claim that the SAML 2.0 application uses for identifying the user; this is normally an email address or account name.

3. If you have a metadata export file from the application:





a. Click Import to import the metadata.

This can save configuration time, as metadata files contain valuable configuration data about an Application, including signing certificate information.

🧿 Add Ap	pplication Wizard	\times
	2.0 Application Settings Account NameID mapping and SAML Metadata import.	
	he User Account property to be provided to My SAML 2.0 App for the NameID cla ort a SAML Metadata export file (optional) to create the SP configuration.	aim
	SAML SP Metadata Import	:
	The selected SAML SP Metadata file information has been imported.	
	ОК	
	< Back Next > Ca	ancel

b. Click OK.

The application metadata is imported. This populates some fields throughout the rest of the wizard.

4. Click Next.





Add Application Wi	
	Provider Configuration Provider details provided by My SAML 2.0 App.
SAML 2.0 Service F	Provider (SP)
Description:	
Entity ID URI:	loadbalancer-9.siroe.com
Assertion URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federation/Consumer/met/
Logout URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federation/SPSIoRedirect.
Artifact URL:	
NameID Format:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAML:2.0:nameid-format:persistent ~
Authn Context:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unspecified ~
	< Back Next > Cancel

5. Enter the settings for the application using the instructions from the vendor of your application.

You may not be required to provide information for every field.

6. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard		×			
SAML 2.0 Service Provider Signing Select the required Service Provider signing options.					
If a trust relationship is required v certificate so the IdP can verify s	vith the Service Provider (SP) then in ignatures.	nport at least one SP			
SAML 2.0 Certificate	S				
SP Certificates:	CN=loadbalancer-9.siroe.com, O=sir Add Remove	roe.com ∨ <u>Cert Info</u>			
Want Signed	Auth Request 🔲 Want Signed Lo	gout Request			
Sign Assertion	to SP 🗌 Sign Logout Res	sponse to SP			
	< Back	Next > Cancel			

7. If required, choose the SAML 2.0 signing certificate.





Your Application Service Provider should provide one or more signing certificates, which may be included in the metadata export. You can import and remove certificates as required:

a. To add a certificate, click Add.

🧿 Open								×
$\leftarrow \rightarrow \cdot \cdot \uparrow \square \rightarrow$ This	PC > Local Disk (C:) > Temp				~ Ö	Search Temp		Q
Organize 👻 New folder							EE ▼ _ [
A Quick access	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size				
Desktop 🖈	SAML2.0 Certificate.cer	13/02/2024 09:52	Security Certificate	1 KB				
👆 Downloads 🖈								
🗄 Documents 🖈								
E Pictures 🖈								
Authlogics Auth								
Log								
MMC								
System32								
💻 This PC								
3D Objects								
E Desktop								
Documents								
🕹 Downloads								
👌 Music								
Pictures								
Videos								
Local Disk (C:)								
File <u>n</u> ar	me: SAML2.0 Certificate.cer				~	Base64 Certif	icate (*.cer)	~
						<u>O</u> pen	_	incel

b. Browse to the signing certificate and click **Open**.

Note: Not all SAML applications require signing or certificates.

- 8. Configure the signing requirements for the application.
- 9. Click Next.

O Add Application Wiza	ard	×
Authentication Option Select the required au		
Primary Password	Windows Authentication	
Primary Options Allow password	reset via Email 🗌 Allow password reset via SMS/Text	
Secondary		
Passkey	YubiKey OTP Grid Pattern	
Push	One Time Code Phrase	
Secondary Options	s 🔲 Allow any selected user configured technology	
	< Back Next >	Cancel



10. You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal.

You can choose one logon technology from the options in the **Primary** section.

If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**.

New applications, by default, have no primary technology selected.

If you select **Password**, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials. If you do not select **Password**, passwordless logins are enabled.

If you select **Windows Authentication** or **Certificate**, the **Primary Options**, **Secondary**, and **Secondary Options** sections are disabled, as these technologies do not require further configuration.

Note: If you select **Windows Authentication**, you must configure IIS to use Windows Authentication – this disables multi-factor authentication for this application. If you enable Windows Authentication in the MMC without configuring Windows Authentication in IIS, the user is shown the standard Windows prompt to enter their Username and Password.

You can choose as many or as few Secondary logon technologies as you want.

If you select only one secondary option, the user must have that logon technology.

If you select multiple secondary options, the type of technology used is determined after the user has entered their account name and, if required, password. The type of logon technology used is determined based on the selected options and which technologies the user has configured. The priority order for the secondary logon technologies is:

- Passkey
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Push
- YubiKey OTP
- One Time Code
- · Phrase (if Allow deviceless is not selected)
- Grid Pattern (if Allow deviceless is selected)
- Phrase (if Allow deviceless is selected)

If **Password** is selected as the primary logon technology, and no secondary logon technology is selected, the user requires only a password to log in.

If a user does not have access to any of the secondary logon technologies selected, they cannot log in to the application, unless all of the following are true:

- No primary logon technology is selected.
- All secondary logon technologies selected require devices.
- The user has no device registered.

In that case, fallback password authentication occurs, and the user can log in with just their username and password.

If no logon technologies are selected, no-one can log in.



If the user has a device registered, the technologies that require a device (**Passkey**, and, if **Allow deviceless** is not selected, **Grid Pattern** and **Phrase**) can be selected, whether or not the device is enabled.

For example, if a user has a FIDO token registered but the device has been disabled, the user is still prompted to authenticate with their FIDO token. This is so that temporarily displaced devices do not allow users to fall back on lesser authentication methods.

If a user temporarily loses their FIDO device, you can give them a temporary access code – by default, this only lasts 24 hours or three logons, whichever comes first. For information on changing temporary access code limitations, see section *5.2.1*, *General tab.* If the user finds their FIDO token, you can re-enable it, and if they cannot find it, you can remove the device from their account and issue a new one. For information on assigning temporary access codes, see section *5.7.12*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)* or section *5.7.13*, *Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)*.

If you select the **Allow any selected user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user can enter only the valid authentication credentials that are shown by the application.

Grid Pattern and Phrase authentication technologies both support deviceless authentication; select the **Allow Deviceless** option to enable this support. If this is selected, you cannot use these technologies with a device, which is less secure. If this is not selected, then multi-factor authentication is always required.

11. Click Next.

🧿 Add Ap	plication Wiza	rd	×
	e configuration u ready to apply		
SAML 2.0	0 App Applicatio	onfiguration changes.	
	Host:	https://idp.federationdemo.com/idp IdP Signing Certificate Copy Base64	
		< Back Next > C	ancel

12. Confirm the **Host** configuration information.

From this screen, you can export or copy the IdP signing certificate that the SAML application requires.



13. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard			×
Add Application Configuration Authentication Server is updating the Ap	plication data.		
Update Progress			
Adding new Application Done			^
			~
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>F</u> inish	Cancel

14. Click Finish.



Your application has now been configured.

5.6 Adding External Identities

MyID supports OpenID Connect External Identity Providers to be used as an authentication type for applications. To add an External Identity Provider:




1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the External Identities node.

MyID Management Console						-	
O Eile Action ⊻iew Window E	<u>l</u> elp						- 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🔂 🖬							
MyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All OpenID Co	nnect External	l Identities			Actions	
V 📴 Domains	Identity Name	Status	Туре	Attribute	Claim	External Identities	•
 authlogicsdemo.com Authlogics Servers 						Add External Identity	
> Authiogics servers			There are no i	tems to show in this view.		 Refresh External Identities 	
Company Groups						View	
✓							•
England						New Window from Here	
> 🖬 France > 💼 Germany						Export List	
> i Ireland						I Help	
> 💼 Italy							
> 📓 Scotland							
> 🖬 Spain > 🖬 Wales							
> Zimbabwe							
> 📔 Managed Service Account							
> 😰 Microsoft Exchange Secur							
> 🧰 Users > 🕮 Realms							
Applications							
External Identities							
V 🎎 Roles							
Administrators Operators							
> RADIUS Users							
PSM Users							
> PSM Exclusion							
< >							
	11						

2. Click Add External Identity, in the Actions pane.

O Add OpenID Connect Extern	nal Identity Wizard	×
	Welcome to the Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard	
-0-	This Wizard will allow you to add a new OpenID Connect External Identity provider which can be used as an authentication type for an Application.	
7		
a chift	To continue, click Next.	
	< Back Next > Cancel	

- 3. Click Next.
- Provide a descriptive Name for the external identity and choose a Provider. MyID External Identities supports providers of type:
 - Google
 See section 5.6.1, Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Google).
 - Microsoft
 See section 5.6.2, Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Microsoft).





5. Set the External Identity to be **Enabled**.



5.6.1 Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Google)

O Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard						
External Identity Information General information for the new External Identity provider.						
Provide a name and select t reference purposes and can	he External Identity provider type. The name is for internal be changed at any time.					
Name: Provider:	Google Identity Google ✓ ✓ Enabled					
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel				

- 1. Click Next.
- 2. Match the **OpenID Connect Claim** with the **Active Directory User Attribute** to link the accounts.

For example, you may want to match the user on the email address where the user's Google email address is stored in the user's Info field in the Active Directory.

🧿 Add Openl	ID Connect External Identity Wizard X						
Account Mapping Map OpenID Connect to Active Directory							
	Connect Claim from the External Identity must be matched to an Active Directory e to link the accounts.						
	OpenID Connect Claim: emailaddress ✓ AD User Attribute: infol ✓						
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel						





	Member Of		Envi	ronment	Sessio	ns
Remote		Dial-in Remote [rvices Profile	COM+	
General	Address	Account	Profile	Telephones	Organizatio	
Ho <u>m</u> e: <u>P</u> ager: Mo <u>b</u> ile: <u>F</u> ax: <u>I</u> P phon					ther ther th <u>e</u> r th <u>e</u> r	
<u>N</u> otes: authlogic:	sdemo@gma	il.com				^
_						<i>.</i>

3. Click Next.

4. Enter the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** retrieved from the Google Cloud API Credentials page.

O Add OpenID Connect Ext	ernal Identity Wizard	×				
Google OAuth 2.0 Enter your details for Google OAuth 2.0.						
	tials, including a client ID and client secret, to authenticat APIs. Create or view your client ID and client secret from gle API Console.					
Client ID: Client Secret:	Google Cloud API Credentials page More Information					
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel				



Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard	<
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?	1
The Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard has gathered all the information required to add the new External Identity.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

- 6. Make a copy of the OpenID Connect client secret for integration with the calling application.
- 7. Click Next.

Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard Add External Identity Provider Configuration Authentication Server is updating the External Identity data.	×
Update Progress	9
Adding new External Identity Provider Done	^
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel





8. Click Finish.

O MyID Management Console						_	X
						_	×
Eile Action View Window E	Jeib						- 6' X
◆ ⇒ 2 🖬 🗟 🖬							
MyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All OpenID	Connect External	Identities			Actions	
 Domains i authlogicsdemo.com 	Identity Name	Status	Туре	Attribute	Claim	External Identities	-
> 📓 Authlogics Servers	G Google Identity	Enabled	Google	info	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Add External Identity	
> iii Builtin						Refresh External Identities	
Company Groups						View	•
🗸 🗐 Company Users						New Window from Here	
England							
> a France > a Germany						Export List	
> i Ireland						👔 Help	
> 📓 Italy							
> 🗐 Scotland							
> 🖬 Spain > 🗊 Wales							
> a wales							
> Managed Service Account							
> 🗊 Microsoft Exchange Secu							
> 🧾 Users							
> 🔢 Realms							
Applications							
V & Roles							
Administrators							
> Coperators							
RADIUS Users PSM Users							
PSM Users SM Exclusion							
y i Pow Exclusion							
< >							



5.6.2 Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Microsoft)

O Add OpenID Connect Ext	ernal Identity Wizard	×				
External Identity Information General information for the new External Identity provider.						
Provide a name and select t reference purposes and can	ne External Identity provider type. The name is for internal be changed at any time.					
Name: Provider:	Microsoft Identity Microsoft ✓ ✓ Enabled					
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel				



- 1. Click Next.
- 2. Match the **OpenID Connect Claim** with the **Active Directory User Attribute** to link the accounts.

For example, you may want to match the user by their email address where the user's Microsoft Live email address is stored in the user's Web Page (wWWHomePage) field in AD.

Member Of		Dial-in	Environment		Sessions	
Remote control		Remote [Desktop Se	rvices Profile	COM+	
General	Address	Account	Profile	Telephones	Organizatio	
8	Administra	ator				
<u>F</u> irst name	:			Initials:		
<u>L</u> ast name	c.					
Di <u>s</u> play na	me:	Administrator				
<u>D</u> escriptio	n:	Built-in account for administering the computer/doma				
Offi <u>c</u> e:						
Telephone	e number:				<u>O</u> ther	
E- <u>m</u> ail:		Administrator	@authlogic	sdemo.com		
<u>W</u> eb page	e:	authlogicsder	mo@outloo	k.com	Othe <u>r</u>	



3. Click Next.

📀 Add OpenID Connect Exte	ernal Identity Wizard	×					
Microsoft OAuth 2.0 Enter your details for Microsoft OAuth 2.0.							
Microsoft identity platform, wh authentication. The ID token	DpenID Connect is issued by the authorization server, the then the client application requests one during user enables a client application to verify the identity of the user as) about them. ID tokens aren't issued by default for an e Microsoft identity platform.	and					
Application ID: Client Secret:	5c006dfb-8db-74a01-014716c8a0++744d #udiomerDatbA+g3+0074b1_mgb405emFUsb Microsoft Entra App registrations						
	More Information < Back Next > Ca	ancel					

- 4. Enter the **Application ID** and **Client Secret** retrieved from the Microsoft Identity Platform.
- 5. Click Next.

Add OpenID Connect External Iden	tity Wizard	>
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?		d'
The Add OpenID Connect External Iden to add the new External Identity.	ntity Wizard has gathered all the	information required
Click Next to apply the configuration ch	anges.	
	< Back Ne	ext > Cancel

6. Make a copy of the OpenID Connect client secret for integration with the calling application.



7. Click Next.



8. Click Finish.

MyID Management Console <u>File Action View W</u> indow <u>H</u>	elp						
🔶 🙇 📰 🗟 🔟 🖬							
MyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All Ope	nID Connect Externa	Identities			Actions	
Domains in authlogicsdemo.com	Identity Name	Status	Туре	Attribute	Claim	External Identities	
 Authlogics Servers 	G Google Identity	Enabled	Google	info	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Add External Identity	
> iii Builtin	Microsoft Identity	Enabled	Microsoft	wWWHomePage	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Refresh External Identities	
Company Groups						View	
🗸 📓 Company Users							
England						New Window from Here	
> 🖆 France > 😭 Germany						Export List	
> internany						Help	
> 💼 Italy							
> 🗊 Scotland							
> 🛅 Spain							
> 📫 Wales							
> 🧾 Zimbabwe							
> In Managed Service Account > In Microsoft Exchange Security > In Microsoft Exchange Security							
Second							
III Realms							
Applications							
External Identities							
Roles							
Administrators Operators							
ADIUS Users							
PSM Users							
> iii PSM Exclusion							
>							

Your Microsoft External Identity has now been configured and is ready for use.



5.7 Managing users

As MyID uses Active Directory as the user account database, the base user accounts may already exist in most cases. You can add Active Directory users one at a time or in bulk to the MyID MMC where they can be set up for various MFA technologies. They can be added from one or multiple OUs at a time as needed.

You can add External User accounts without the need for a full Active Directory Domain user account. These external accounts are stored within the forest root domain as LDAP person objects and cannot be used for Windows-based logons. A Realm must be created to contain an External User account.

You can use External User accounts together with the Windows Desktop Agent to add MFA to local Windows user accounts on both domain-joined and workgroup based systems.

Adding a user account to the MyID MMC allows the user to make use of the Self Service Portal and, if an MFA license is installed, they can be provisioned for Multi-Factor Authentication technologies.

You can carry out the following:

• Add a new realm.

See section 5.7.1, Adding a new realm.

• View MFA and PSM account types.

See section 5.7.2, User account types – MFA or PSM.

- Add a MyID user account.
 See section 5.7.3, Adding a new MyID user account.
- Add a PSM user account.
 See section 5.7.4, Adding a new MyID PSM user account.
- Add an external MFA user account.

See section 5.7.5, Adding a new external MFA user account.

- Set up Grid Pattern authentication. See section 5.7.6, Setting up a user for Grid Pattern Authentication.
- Set up Phrase authentication.

See section 5.7.7, Setting up a user for Phrase authentication.

- Set up One Time Code authentication. See section 5.7.8, Setting up a user for One Time Code.
- Set up YubiKey OTP. See section 5.7.9, Setting up a user for YubiKey OTP.
- View the MFA devices for a user. See section 5.7.10, *Multi-Factor devices assigned to a user account*.
- Manage user passwords. See section *5.7.11*, *Managing user passwords*.
- Assign temporary access codes using the MMC. See section 5.7.12, Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC).



• Assign temporary access codes using the web portal.

See section 5.7.13, Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal).

5.7.1 Adding a new realm

A realm is a container to store External User accounts. Each account within a realm must have a unique name. Realms can be nested – you can create a realm inside another realm for easier account management. You can rename realms and account names.

Note: A realm name may contain letters, numbers, dots, and underscores, but cannot be the same as an existing Active Directory domain name.

The realm name forms part of the user logon name. A user would enter their logon names as follows:

- Domain style: <realm>\<account>
- UPN style: <account>@<realm>

To add a new realm:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the **Realms** node.

Q Authlogics Management Console			-	o x
O File Action View Window H	elp			_ 8 ×
🗢 🄿 🙇 📰 🗟 🖬				
📙 Authlogics PSM & MFA	Realms External Realms	Ac	tions	
 Domains # authlogicsdemo.com 	There are no items to show in this view.	Re	alms	^
> iii Builtin	The de to kens to show in this year.	2	Add Realm	
> Company Groups		1	View	•
✓ ☑ Company Users			New Window from Here	
England			Refresh	
> a France > a Germany				
> i Ireland			Export List	
> 🖬 Italy		2	Help	
> Scotland				
> 🖬 Spain > 🗐 Wales				
> i Zimbabwe				
> Managed Service Account				
> Microsoft Exchange Secure > Users				
Realms				
V & Roles				
> 📫 Administrators				
> Operators > In RADIUS Users				
ADIUS Users Password Policy Users				
> PSM Excluded Users				
< >				

2. Click Add Realm, in the Actions pane.

Add Realm	×
Enter the name of the new Realm.	OK
Note: Only Alphanumberic, dot and underscore characters are permitted.	Cancel
External01	

3. Enter the name of the new realm.



4. Click OK.

O Authlogics Management Console		-	
<u>File</u> <u>Action</u> <u>View</u> <u>Window</u> <u>H</u>	elp		_ 8 >
🗢 🔿 🙍 📰 🗟 🔢			
Authlogics PSM & MFA	Realms External Realms	Actions	
 Buthlogicsdemo.com 	External01	Realms	-
> 📔 Builtin		🖧 Add Realm	
> 📓 Company Groups		View	•
🗸 🗊 Company Users		New Window from Here	
💼 England			
> 🖾 France		Refresh	
> 📓 Germany		By Export List	
> 🔟 Ireland		Help	
> 🖆 Italy > 🗃 Scotland			
> D Scotland			
> 🖬 Spain > 🛱 Wales			
> i Zimbabwe			
> 🧰 Managed Service Account			
> 🗐 Microsoft Exchange Secur			
> 🛗 Users			
✓ III Realms			
> External01			
V 🍇 Roles			
> 📫 Administrators			
> Cperators > RADIUS Users			
> ADIUS Users > Password Policy Users			
> Password Policy Users			
/ Sivi Excluded Osers			
< >			
		,	

You have now added a realm. You can add more realms using the same method if required,

5.7.2 User account types – MFA or PSM

You can add different types of users based on the type of licenses installed. If an MFA license is installed, you can create a user account that can be provisioned for various MFA logon technologies and devices.

If only a PSM license is installed, you can create users with only PSM self-services features. PSM users can access the Self Service Portal to change or reset their password with One Time Codes. PSM users cannot be provisioned for use with Multi-Factor Authentication.

If an MFA license is added to an installation that previously only had a PSM license, existing users can immediately be provisioned for Multi-Factor Authentication.

Note: External User Accounts can be used with MFA only, as PSM requires an Active Directory user account.



5.7.3 Adding a new MyID user account

To add a new MyID user account:

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate domain.

You can expand the list of OUs to see what accounts already exist.

MyID Management Console Eile Action View Window Price Price Price	∃elp				
	authlogicsdemo.com	All Authlogics User Acco	unts in container authlogics	demo.com	Actions
Multi DSM & MFA → Domains → Domains > ■ Authlogicstema.com > ■ Authlogicstema.com > ■ Builtin > ■ Company Groups > ■ Mcoostit Exchange Secc. > ■ Relns > ■ Relns > ■ Relns > ■ Applications > ↓ Charmal Identities ● Roles	Account Name & Administrator	All Authlogics User Acco	Last Name	demo.com Description Built-in account for administering the compute	authlogicsdemo.com
< >>	<				>

2. Click Add User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with MyID.	2
Active Directory user accounts in this list will be configured for use with MyID. To include user accounts from Active Directory Click Add. To remove user acco list tick the accounts and click Remove.	ounts from the
	Add Remove
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. To add existing Active Directory users click Add.

Note: This process does not create user accounts in the Active Directory Domain, it simply adds MyID metadata to an *existing* account. Ensure that the domain accounts exist before adding them to the MyID MMC.

Selec	t Users ×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>):	Check Names
Advanced	OK Cancel





5. Click Advanced.

Select this object Users	type:			Object Types
From this location				<u>o</u> bject types
authlogicsdemo.				Locations
Common Querie	98			
Name:	Starts with $\ \lor$			<u>C</u> olumns
Description:	Starts with \smallsetminus			Find <u>N</u> ow
Disabled a	ccounts			Stop
Non expirir	ng password			
Days since las	st logon: 🗸 🗸	1		<i>Ş</i> 7
	-			
Country may the			ОК	Cancel
-	E-Mail Address	In Folder	ОК	Cancel
lame	E-Mail Address	In Folder	ОК	Cancel
lame	charleen.njango		ОК	Cancel
ame Charleen Njan Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo	charleen.njango charlot.shuck@ d charmine.judd@	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ОК	Cancel
ame Charleen Njan Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo Chelsey Fahre	charleen.njango charlot.shuck@ d charmine.judd@ chelsey.fahrend	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ок	Cancel
ame Charleen Njan Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo Chelsey Fahre Cherilynn Ripp	charleen njango charlot shuck@ d charmine judd@ chelsey fahrend in cherilynn rippin	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ОК	Cancel
ame Charleen Njan Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo Chelsey Fahre Cherilynn Ripp Cherin Hanner	charleen.njango charlot.shuck@ d charmine judd@ chelsey fahrend in cherilynn.rippin s cherin hanners	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ОК	Cancel
Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo Chelsey Fahre Cherilynn Ripp	charleen njango charlot shuck@ d charmine judd@ chelsey fahrend in cherilynn rippin s cherin hanners cherlyn durie@a	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ОК	Cancel
Ame Charleen Njan Charlot Shuck Charmine Judo Chelsey Fahre Cherilynn Ripp Cherin Hanner Cherin Hanner	charleen njango charlot shuck@ d charmine judd@ chelsey fahrend in chenlynn rippin s cherin hanners cherlyn durie@a cherlyn khensov	authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo	ОК	Cancel

- 6. Click Find Now.
- 7. Select the required users from Active Directory and click **OK**.

Select Users	×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>):	
; Clarissa Hirschberg (clarissa.hirschberg@authlogicsdemo.com): <u>Clarisse Grillo (clarisse.grillo@authlogicsdemo.com);</u> <u>Clarita Cecchi (clarita.cecchi@authlogicsdemo.com)</u> V	Check Names
Advanced OK	Cancel



8. Click **OK**.

To remove accounts from the list, check the box next to the name and click Remove.

	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with MyID.	2
Active Directory user accounts in this list will be configured for use with MyID. To include user accounts from Active Directory Click Add. To remove user account list tick the accounts and click Remove.	s from the
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Becky Shandro (becky.shandro@autl ▲ AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Belinda Coomey (belinda.coomey@au AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bellanca Chiszar (bellanca.chiszar@a AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bellina Zehring (bellina.zehring@authl AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bemardina Weems (bemardina.weem AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bemardine ller (bemardine.iler@authl AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Berny Mesko (berny.mesko@authlogic × Rem	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

9. Click Next.

📀 Add Use	r Account Wiz	ard				×
Account O Genera	•	new user account.				2
By default						wizard.
	Valid from:	01 November 2024			Alway	s
	Valid to:	01 November 2024		•	🗹 Alway	s
			< Back	N	ext >	Cancel

10. Set the account options.

Account options determine the user's initial state. Accounts can be given the start and end validity dates and can be created as disabled accounts for later use.

The mobile phone privacy setting can also be specified.



11. Click Next.

📀 Add User Account Wizard	×
Active Directory Password AD Password randomisation options for the new user account.	8
The password randomisation options specified here will apply to new accounts created us this wizard.	ing
 Randomise Password every 26 days Randomise Password Now 	
< Back Next > Ca	ncel

12. If you have set the **Randomise AD Passwords every** *x* **days** setting in the domain dialog, choose if the users have their passwords randomized, and whether the passwords are initially randomized.

For more information on setting password randomization, see section 5.3.1, *Domain Properties dialog*.

13. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard	×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the new	user account.
The Passwordless authentication options options sp created using this wizard.	ecified here will apply to new accounts
 Enable FIDO Passkey Authenticatio Enable Push Authentication Require Biometric Seed in Authentic 	
	< Back Next > Cancel

• IKB-445 – Proving your Identity by providing a Grid row works only when requiring a biometric seed is disabled on the user's device



The **Prove your Identity by providing a Grid row** feature, which allows you to carry out two-way identification by identifying yourself to a user, does not work when the **Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App** option is applied to the user's device on the Passwordless Authentication page of the User Management wizard or Add User Account wizard, or the **Require biometric seed** option is set in the **Devices** page of the user properties. If you want to use this feature, you must disable the biometric seed option and carry out a device resynchronization.

- 14. Choose whether the users are enabled for FIDO and/or Mobile Push authentication.
- 15. Click Next.

Image: Add User Account Wizard X
FIDO usage instruction email FIDO usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.
Don't output user details Email user details
Send to Email Addresses: Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fidc Browse
< Back Next > Cancel
Add User Account Wizard X
Push usage instruction email Push usage instructions can be emailed to the user using an HTML template.
 Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses:
Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Pus Browse
< Back Next > Cancel



16. Choose if or how the users receive their welcome email.

The welcome email contains instructions on how to set up their device for FIDO and Mobile Push based on your selection above.

If a single user is selected, you can specify the email address to deliver the email to.

When adding multiple users, the user's email address is retrieved from Active Directory or the alternate email address field and sent to them automatically.

📀 Add User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	2
The Add User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configu accounts.	ire the user
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< Back Next >	Cancel



18. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	8
Update Progress	
Sending email to "beny.mesko@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\bertina.carranza (bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com) Sending email to "bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Sending email to "bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Done.	^
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The new user accounts have been created.

19. Click Finish.

O MyID Management Console					-	×
O File Action View Window He	eln					- 8 ×
♦ ♦ 2 □ ≥ 0 □						
MyID PSM & MFA	authla single and a second	II Austria Ilan Asa	unts in container authlogics		Actions	
V Domains		-				
iii) authlogicsdemo.com	Account Name & Administrator	First Name	Last Name	Description	authlogicsdemo.com	-
> 2 Authlogics Servers	Administrator Secky.shandro	Becky	Shandro	Built-in account for administering the computer/do	OUs / Containers	
> 📫 Builtin > 📓 Company Groups	& belinda.coomey	Belinda	Coomey		All Users	
> Company Users	& bellanca.chiszar	Bellanca	Chiszar		Q Search for User Accounts	
> 🧾 Managed Service Account	bellina.zehring	Bellina	Zehring		🥭 Refresh Users	
> 📓 Microsoft Exchange Secur		Bernardina	Weems		🚴 Add User Account	
Users	& bernardine.iler	Bernardine	ller		View	•
> 🚔 child.authlogicsdemo.com	& bernetta.currington & berry.mesko	Bernetta Berry	Currington Mesko		New Window from Here	
External01	berry.mesko bertina.carranza	Berry Bertina	Carranza		Q Refresh	
> 📑 Applications	E bertina.carranza	bertina	Currenza			
 > () External Identities Roles 					Export List	
< >	<			>		



5.7.4 Adding a new MyID PSM user account

PSM user accounts can be manually added if required, however PSM users automatically appear in the MMC when a user changes their password or logs onto the Self Service Portal.

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate domain.

You can expand the list of OUs to see what accounts already exist.

C Ele deton Yeew Workew Help C Mulp DSM C markets C m	O MyID Management Console						-	o x
Implo PSM Figland All PSM Vice Accounts in containe England Actions > Implo PSM Authogics demo.com Actions England Count Name First Name List Name Description > Implo PSM Company Groups Company Groups There are no items to show in this view. Company Groups Add PSM User Accounts Company Groups > Implo PSM Implo PSM First Name List Name Description Company Groups > Implo PSM Implo PSM There are no items to show in this view. Company Groups <	<u> </u>	<u>H</u> elp						- 8 ×
 Commines Actual Mame First Name List Name Description Company Groups Company Gr	🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬							
• Multiplicidenciance • Set Antibiogics Servers • Set Antibiogics Servers • Set Antibiogics Servers • Set Company Users • Company Users	MyID PSM	England All PSM User	Accounts in container Eng	land			Actions	
> ■ Attributions: Severs There are no items to show in this view. > ■ Company Groups Company Groups > ■ Company Groups Refresh Users > ■ France Add PSM User Account > ■ France Refresh Users > ■ Scotland Spain > ■ Managed Service Account Wew > ■ Managed Service Account Heip > ■ Managed Service Account Heip		Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description		England	
> ■ Luikin > ■ Luikin > ■ Company Users > ■ Company Users > ■ Trance > ■ Trance > ■ Isaby > ■ Scaland > ■ Scaland > ■ Scaland > ■ Maraged Service Account > ■ Water Account > ■ Maraged Service Account							-	
> all company (torso): > all company (torso): > all torgland. > al				There are no items to show in t	iis view.		Refresh Users	
View New Vindow from Here Company Users Wew Company Lens New Vindow from Here Company Lens Refresh Spain Spain Sign Vales Spain Sign Vales Wes Sign Vales Help								
 ↓ a france ↓ fran								
Control								•
 > in telnd > in telnd > in Schland > in Schland > in Maraged Service Account 							New Window from Here	
 > and hav > and hav > and solution <l< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Refresh</td><td></td></l<>							Refresh	
 > in Sociand > in Marged Service Account <							🔿 Export List	
 > ■ Spain > ■ Zmbabwe > ■ Zmbabwe > ■ Microsoft Exchange Secue > ■ Uncosoft Exchange Secue > ■ Uncosoft Exchange Secue > ■ Uncosoft Exchange Secue > ■ Pole Site Site Site Site Site Site Site Sit	> 📫 Scotland							
 > a Zmobalve > a Microsoft schange Sacut > a Vicrosoft schange Sacut > a Vicrosoft schange Sacut > a Vicrosoft schange Sacut > a Applications > a Applications > a Roles 								
 > Maraged Service Account > ⇒ Moraged Service Account > ⇒ Horaged Service Account > ⇒ Roles 								
 a) Microseft Exchange Secur b) a) Ueus c) Apple-factors c) Apple-factors c) Apple-factors c) Apple-factors c) Apple-factors c) Apple-factors 								
> ≥ with the hold by contract com > ∞ Applications > ↓ ← External identities > ₩ Roles								
> Se Applications > ⊡ Applications > ⊡ Applications > External Identities > Se Roles								
> ∰ Applexations								
> & Roles	> 📑 Applications							
< >> <	> 🍇 Roles							
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
	< >	<				>		

2. Click Add PSM User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

O Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with MyID.	8
Active Directory user accounts in this list will be configured for use with MyID. To include user accounts from Active Directory Click Add. To remove user accounts fro list tick the accounts and click Remove.	om the
Add Remove	Ð
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. To add existing Active Directory users, click Add.

Note: This process does not create user accounts in the Active Directory Domain, it simply adds MyID metadata to an *existing* account. Ensure that the domain accounts exist before adding them to the MyID MMC.

Se	elect Users ×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examp</u>	l <u>es</u>): Check Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK Cancel





5. Click Advanced.

Select this object type:			
Users		Object	Types
rom this location:			
England		<u>L</u> oca	tions
Common Queries			
Name: Starts with	×		<u>C</u> olumns
Description: Starts with	~		Find <u>N</u> ow
Disabled accounts			Stop
Non expiring password			
Days since last logon:	~		?
	~	ОК	Cancel
Days since last logon:		OK In Folder authlogicsdemo.com	

- 6. Click Find Now.
- 7. Select the required users from Active Directory and click **OK**.

Select Users		×
Select this object type:		Object Types
From this location: England]	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>): Arty Uzdygan (arty.uzdygan@authlogicsdemo.com);	<u>````</u>	Check Names
Athene Grieshaber (athene.grieshaber@authlogicsdemo.com Auberta Crisco (auberta.crisco@authlogicsdemo.com)	<u>im)</u> : ¥	
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK	Cancel



8. Click OK.

To remove accounts from the list, check the box next to the name and click Remove.

📀 Add PSM User Account Wizard		×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with	h MyID.	2.
Active Directory user accounts in this list will To include user accounts from Active Director list tick the accounts and click Remove.		
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Adrianna Can AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ame Threats AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Anny Larason AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ardenia Ruch AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ardenia Ruch AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Arduene Feige AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Arduene Griest </td <td>(ame threats@authlogic:) (anny Jarason@authlog nan (arabela.waman@a ti (ardenia.ruchti@authlo nbaum (arluene.feigenb (arly.uzdygan@authlogii</td> <td>Add Remove</td>	(ame threats@authlogic:) (anny Jarason@authlog nan (arabela.waman@a ti (ardenia.ruchti@authlo nbaum (arluene.feigenb (arly.uzdygan@authlogii	Add Remove
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> e	xt > Cancel

O Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	8
The Add PSM User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configu user accounts.	ire the
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



10. Click Next.

📀 Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	2
Update Progress	
(arluene feigenbaum@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\arly.uzdygan (arly.uzdygan@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\athene.grieshaber (athene.grieshaber@authlogicsdemo.com\ Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\auberta.crisco (auberta.crisco@authlogicsdemo.com\ Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\bettine.shepeard (bettine.shepeard@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. The Add PSM User Account Wizard is complete.	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The new user accounts have been created.

11. Click Finish.

MyID Management Console					_	
O Eile Action View Window	Help					_ 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🔒 📓 📷						
MyID PSM	England All PSM User A	counts in container E	ngland		Actions	
▼ ■ Domains ▼ ■ Unthlogics Servers > ■ Authlogics Servers > ■ Untilnin > ■ Company Groups > ■ Company Groups > ■ Company Groups > ■ France ■ Germany ■ Terland > ■ Iteland > ■ Sopain > ■ Wates > ■ Zimbabwe > ■ Microsoft Exchange Sect > ■ Users	Account Name & adrianna.canclini & amethreats & anny.larason & arabela.varman & ardenia.ruchti & arduren.feigenbarm & aty.uchti & aturen.efigenbarm & aturen.efigenbarm & aturen.efigenbarm & aturen.efigenbarm & bettine.shepeard	First Name Adrianna Anne Anny Arabela Ardenia Arduene Arly Athene Auberta Bettine	Last Name Canclini Threats Larason Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Uzdygan Grischaber Crisco Shepeard	Description	Regind Q Search for User Accounts 2 Refresh Users 3 Add PSM User Account View New Window from Here C Refresh Image: Depot List Image: Depot List Image: Help Help	,
> ∰ child.authlogicidemo.com > ☐ Applications > ☐ Fatemal Identities > ૠ Roles	K				5	





5.7.5 Adding a new external MFA user account

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.

MyID Management Console						- 🗆 ×
Eile Action View Window E	Help					- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬 👘						
MyID PSM & MFA	External01 All User Acc	ounts in the Realm			Actions	
 Domains ji authlogicsdemo.com 	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	External01	-
> m authogicsdemo.com		The	e are no items to show in this	view.	Q Search for User Accou	nts
✓ III Realms					🤹 Refresh Users	
External01					👶 Add MFA User Accour	ıt
> (- External Identities					Add Realm	
& Roles					View	•
					New Window from He	re
					🗙 Delete	
					🛒 Rename	
					Refresh	
					📑 Export List	
					👔 Help	
	<				>	
					<u> </u>	

2. Click Add MFA User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

📀 Add MFA User Account	×			
Account Details Account information for	2			
Enter the account name, f The account name is requ			ew user account.	
Account name:	johnd			
First name:	John	Last name:	Doe	
UPN:	johnd@external01			
Email:	john@doe.com			
Mobile Phone:				
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. Enter the details for the new user account.

Only the **Account name** is required, all other fields are optional.

The UPN is automatically generated based on the **Realm** and **Account name**; however, it may be manually edited as needed.

O Add MFA User Accou	nt Wizard	×
Account Options General options for the	e new user account.	8
	cified here will apply to new user accounts created by this wiz are enabled from the date of creation and do not expire.	ard.
Valid from:	08 February 2024	
Valid to:	08 February 2024	
valid to:		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



6. Set the account options.

Account options determine the user's initial state. Accounts can be given the start and end validity dates and can be created as disabled accounts for later use.

7. Click Next.

O Add MFA User Account Wizard	×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the new user account.	8
The Passwordless authentication options options specified here will apply to new account created using this wizard.	s
 Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication Enable Push Authentication Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App 	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ancel

8. Choose whether to enable the users for FIDO and/or Mobile Push authentication.

At this stage, you can force Mobile App users to provide Biometric information as part of the authentication process.

📀 Add Mi	A User Account Wizard	×
	age instruction email usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	8
	Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: iohn@doe.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fidc Browse	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel



10. Choose if or how the users receive their welcome email.

The welcome email contains instructions on how to set up their device for FIDO and Mobile Push based on your selection above.

If a single user is selected, you can specify the email address to deliver the email to.

When adding multiple users, the user's email address is retrieved from Active Directory or the alternate email address field and sent to them automatically.

The appropriate FIDO and PUSH HTML template files can be selected to use for the email.

O Add MFA User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	
The Add MFA User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure user accounts.	the
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ncel



12. Click Next.

📀 Add MFA User Account Wizard			×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new u	iser account deta	is.	2
Update Progress			
- Adding user account			^
			~
	< Back	Finish	Cancel

The new user account is created.

13. Click Finish.

MyID Management Console					- 🗆 X
O Eile Action View Window	Help				- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🔒 🛛 📅					
MyID PSM & MFA	External01 All User	Accounts in the Realm			Actions
 Domains authlogicsdemo.com 	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	External01
> m authiogicsdemo.com	& johnd	John	Doe		Q Search for User Accounts
✓ III Realms					🥏 Refresh Users
External01					👶 Add MFA User Account
> (External Identities					Add Realm
& Roles					View
					New Window from Here
					🔀 Delete
					Rename
					Refresh
					Export List
					I Help
	<				>



5.7.6 Setting up a user for Grid Pattern Authentication

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with Grid Pattern Authentication.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the Grid settings.

MyID Management Console						-	
Eile Action View Window E	jelp						_ 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙇 📰 🗟 🖬							
MyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	ints in container Englai	nd			Actions	
Mythol PSM& MFA → Domains → Domains → Domains → Domains > ⇒ Dathlogics Servers > ⇒ Dathlogics Servers > ⇒ Dompany Groups > ⇒ Company Groups > ⇒ Company Groups > ⇒ Company Groups > ⇒ Gompany Groups > ⇒ Gompany Groups > ⇒ Grand > ⇒ Grand > ⇒ Gompany Groups > ⇒ Gompany Groups	Account Name anc.Liveati anny.Jarason arachizeati ardenia.ruchti ardenia.ruchti ardy.uorgan aty.uorgan athene.grieshaber auberta.crisco bettine.shepeard	nts in container Engla First Name Adrianna Anny Arabela Ardenia Arduene Ardy Athene Auberta Bettine	nd Last Name Canclini Tureats Lasson Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Udygan Grieshaber Crisco Shepeard	Description		Actions England G. Search for User Accounts Search for User Accounts Add User Account View New Window from Here For Expert List Help methreets User Account Management Go I bable User Account Management One Time Code Management Physe Management Help Help	,
< >	<				>		

 Click Grid Management, in the Actions pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	\times
Grid Pattern creation method What size and method do you wish to use to create a new Grid Pattern for the user?	
A new Pattem can be automatically generated or the administrator can manually specify a Pattem for the user. A simple or complex Pattem can be created using either a 6x6 or 8x8 grid.	
Manually Specified Pattern	
<u>A</u> utomatically Generate Pattern	
Generate complex Pattern	
Grid Size	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	

5. Choose the Pattern provisioning method and grid size for the selected users.

Users can have random Patterns generated automatically or the administrator can choose to manually configure the user's information. If you are applying these settings to multiple accounts simultaneously, only the automatic option is available.

By default, MyID MFA generates a simple pattern for the user. Enable the **Generate complex Pattern** option for a more secure pattern.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Grid user detail instruction email Grid usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	
 <u>D</u>on't output Grid user details Email Grid user details 	
Send to Email Addresses:	
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



7. Select the method used to distribute the Pattern and grid usage instructions to the user.

Auto-generated information can be emailed to the user. Additionally, if you provide manually specified settings, you can specify not to output any details; this option is not available for auto-generated details.

You can send the email to multiple addresses by entering multiple email addresses separated by a semi-colon (;).

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. If you are manually specifying a pattern:
 - a. Enter the required pattern.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Create new Grid Pattern Click the boxes in the blank grid to creat	te a new Pattem.
	After entering the Pattern, click the Set button then enter the Pattern again to confirm. To start over click the Clear button. <u>Set</u> Qlear Progress: Current Pattern Length: 6 Minimum Pattern Lengh: 6
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

b. Click Set.





c. Confirm the Pattern entered previously.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Create new Grid Pattern Click the boxes in the blank grid to create a new Pa	ttem.
then enter	ering the Pattern, click the Set button er the Pattern again to confirm. over click the Clear button.
Progress Current F	Set <u>O</u> lear
The new	Pattern has been confirmed successfully.
<	Back Next > Cancel

If the patterns match, the displayed grid turns green. If the patterns do not match, the grid turns red.

d. Click **Clear** to re-enter the pattern or click **Next** to continue.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Grid user options Configure the Grid settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for Grid Authentication	
User must change Pattern at next logon	
Pattern never expires	
Enable Multi-Factor Authentication	
Disable Deviceless	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	



10. Configure the Grid pattern user options.

You can set a user's Pattern to expire the next time that they log in, forcing them to change the pattern. You can also set a user's Pattern to never expire.

In MFA deployments, you can enable and enforce the user account to use a Multi-Factor device. An MFA device must be registered with the user account, otherwise the challenge delivered through email or SMS/TEXT fails.

11. Click Next.

remotely ge	enerated via the Authe) or in advance (Pre-S	an be delivered to a device via SMS or er enticator App. SMS and email tokens can end). Tokens sent in advance can be giv	be sent instan	ntly
	Delivery Method:	No delivery / Authenticator App	~	
	Queue Type:	Real-Time	~	
	Token Lifespan:	15 🜲 Minutes		

12. Select the delivery method for Multi-Factor tokens.

Ensure that the user has either an Email address or Mobile telephone number for the tokens to be delivered to, if you have chosen either of those methods for delivery.

Queue Type determines whether tokens are pre-sent or generated in Real-Time. When Queue Type is set to Pre-Send, an administrator must specify the Token Lifespan for these token types.

The **Enable remote seed for soft tokens** option requires that the remote seed value generated by the Authentication Server is configured on the MFA device registered with the user account, otherwise authentication fails. This value is automatically installed through the QR code in the device enrollment process.


13. Click Next.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\GridUserTemplate.html	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

14. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

15. Click Next.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	Х
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the Grid user information to the directory?	
The Grid User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the Grid user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I



16. Click Next.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new Grid user information.	
Update Progress Provisioning the user account "ame threats" Done.	~
- Sending email to "ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. The Grid User Management Wizard is complete.	
	Ŷ
< <u>B</u> ack Finish	Cancel

17. Click Finish.



5.7.7 Setting up a user for Phrase authentication

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with Phrase Pattern Authentication.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the Phrase settings.

	Help					- 🗆 X
🗢 🔿 🙍 🖬 🗟 🖬						
MyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	nts in container Engla	nd		Actions	
	Account Name annethreas anny Jarason ardenia:ruchti ardenia:ruchti ardy:uncheigenbaum ardy:unggan aty:unggan bettine.shepeard	nts in container Engla First Name Adrianna Anne Anny Arabela Ardenia Ardenia Artuene Artuene Auberta Bettine	nd Last Name Canclini Treesis Larason Warman Ruchti Feigenburn Uzdygan Grisebaber Crisco Shepeard	Description	Actions England Search for User Accounts Add User Account View New Window from Here Refresh Users Farlen Users Before Tellst Farlen User Account Management Grid Management Phrase Management Properties Help	
< >	<				>	

3. Click **Phrase Management**, in the **Actions** pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥘 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Memorable Answers creation method What method do you wish to use to create answers for the user?	
A new initial answer can be automatically selected or the administrator can manually specify answers for the user.	
 <u>Manually Specified Answers</u> <u>Automatically Generate Codeword Answer</u> 	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

5. Choose the provisioning method.

You can set a user to get a randomly generated Codeword answer, or the administrator can choose to manually configure the user's information. If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, only the automatic option is available.



6. Click Next.

🥘 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Phrase Authentication user detail instruction email Phrase usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML temp	olate.
O Don't output Phrase user details	
Send to Email Addresses:	_
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Select the delivery method for Phrase settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

7. Click Next.

Ģ	Phrase Authentication User Management Wiz	zard	×
	Memorable Answers Complete the answers to the questions which ar	e specific to the user.	
	Answer a minimum of 1 questions from the list below characters long. Note: All spaces will be removed.	v. Each answer must be at least 6	
	Question: What is	Answer:	
	your Codeword	SecretWord	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	



8. To specify the pattern manually, enter answers for the questions ensuring that each answer is at least the minimum number of prescribed characters and that enough questions have been answered.

The Next button appears only when these conditions are satisfied.

9. Click Next.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	Х
Phrase Authentication user options Configure the Phrase Authentication settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for Phrase Authentication	
User must change answers at next logon	
Enable Multi-Factor Authentication	
Disable Deviceless	
Use full answer instead of One Time Code	
OTP Length: 3 🖨 Digits	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	

10. Configure Phrase Authentication user options.

You can set up an account so that the next time the user logins with the account, the user is forced to change the answers at the next logon.

In MFA deployments, you can enable and enforce the user account to use a Multi-Factor device by selecting the Disable Deviceless option.

You can configure an account to require the user to enter the full answer instead of random letters from the answer.

Note: This is not meant to be used as a true password-based system and is disabled by default.

Set the OTC Length for the number of characters a user needs to provide from the predetermined answer.



11. Click Next.

🧐 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	\times
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\PhraseUserTemplate.html Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

12. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

13. Click Next.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the Phrase Authentication user information to the directory?	
The Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the Phrase user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	əl



14. Click Next.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new Phrase Authentication user information	
Update Progress	
Provisioning the user account "ame threats" Done. Sending email to "ame threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent.	
The Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard is complete.	
~	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish Cancel	

The configuration changes are applied.

15. Click Finish.



5.7.8 Setting up a user for One Time Code

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with One Time Code.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the One Time Code settings.

MyID Management Console Eile Action View Window E	jelp				-	- 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙇 📰 🔒 📓 🖬						
NyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	nts in container Englar	nd		Actions	
▼ Bornains × Seathlogicsdemo.com > Microsoft Exchange Secur > Seathlogicsdemo.com > Realers > Applications > Federal Identifies > Reles	Account Name & adama.cancini & me.livests & mo.livests & another and the account & arbeta.varbit & arb	First Name Adrianna Anne Anny Arabela Ardenia Arduene Artuene Athy Athene Auberta Bettine	Last Name Canclini Teresis Larason Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Uzdygan Grisehaber Crisco Shepeard	Description	England Search for User Accounts Refexh Users Add User Account View New Window from Here Refexh Beport List Help arretfreets Disable User Account Management Gind Management Ore function Phrase Management Ore function Phrase Management Phrase Management	

3. Click **One Time Code Management**, in the **Actions** pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
Static PIN method What method do you wish to use to create a PIN for the user, if any?	
The users AD password can be used instead of a PIN or the administrator can manually specify a PIN. Altematively, a PIN can be automatically generated or not required at all for OTP only validation.	
O Use AD password as PIN	
<u>Manually Specified PIN</u>	
<u>A</u> utomatically Generate PIN	
○ No PIN / Password required - OTP only	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

5. Choose the Static PIN Method.

The following PIN options exist:

- Use AD Password as PIN The user's Active Directory password is used instead of a PIN.
- Manually Specified PIN The administrator manually specifies a PIN.

If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, this option is not available.

- Automatically Generate PIN The PIN is automatically generated.
- No PIN / Password required OTP only The PIN is not required at all for OTP only validation.

This option is only available if you enabled it through Global settings.



6. Click Next.

🥘 One Time Code User Management Wizard				
One Time Code user detail instruction email OTC usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.				
O Don't output One Time Code user details				
Email One Time Code user details Send to Email Addresses:				
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com				
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	el 🛛			

7. Select the delivery method for One Time Code settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be printed or emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. If you are manually specifying the PIN, enter the user's PIN and confirm the PIN.

🥘 One Time Code User Management Wi	zard	\times			
	Create new static Personal Identification Number (PIN) Enable or Disable, and set a new PIN for the user account.				
OTP. The PIN can be entered before, after To require a user to use a PIN, enter a PIN Enter the new PIN: ••••					
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I			



10. Click Next.

🥘 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
One Time Code user options Configure the One Time Code settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for One Time Code	
User must change PIN at next logon	
OTP Code Length: 6 Digits	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> > Cancel	

11. Configure One Time Code user options.

You can set an account so that the next time the user logins with this account, the user is forced to change the PIN at the next logon.

Set the **OTP Code Length** to the number of characters long that you want the OTP code to be.

12. Click Next.

🕖 One Time Code User Manage	ment Wizard	×
Multi-Factor Token Delivery Select the delivery type to be u	-	
remotely generated via the Authe	an be delivered to a device via SMS or email or can be nticator App. SMS and email tokens can be sent instantly end). Tokens sent in advance can be given a time to live	
Delivery Method:	No delivery / Authenticator App \sim	
Queue Type:	Real-Time 🗸	
Token Lifespan:	15 🚖 Minutes	
Codes / message:	1	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	el



13. Select the delivery method for Multi-Factor tokens.

Ensure that the user has either an Email address or Mobile telephone number for the tokens to be delivered to, if you have chosen either of those methods for delivery.

Queue Type determines whether tokens are pre-sent or generated in Real-Time. When Queue Type is set to Pre-Send, an administrator must specify the Token Lifespan for these token types.

The **Enable remote seed for soft tokens** option requires that the remote seed value generated by the Authentication Server is configured on the MFA device registered with the user account, otherwise authentication fails. This value is automatically installed through the QR code in the device enrollment process.

14. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\OtcUserPINTemplate.html	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

15. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.



16. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	Х
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the One Time Code user information to the directory?	
The One Time Code User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the One Time Code user information in the directory. Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel	

17. Click Next.

	🦁 One Time Code User Management Wizard	X
		\sim
	Directory update	
	The user account is being updated with the new One Time Code user information.	
-		
	Update Progress	
	- Provisioning the user account "ame threats" Done. - Sending email to "ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent.	
	The One Time Code User Management Wizard is complete.	
	~	
-		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish Cancel	

The configuration changes are applied.

18. Click Finish.



5.7.9 Setting up a user for YubiKey OTP

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with YubiKey OTP.

Note: To be able to set up a user for YubiKey OTPs, you must enable YubiKey OTPs on the **YubiKey OTP** tab of the global settings. For more information, see section *5.2.15*, *YubiKey OTP tab*.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the YubiKey One Time Code settings.

Image: Section Sector Accounts Image: Sector Sector Accounts Image: Sector Sector Accounts Image: Sector Sector Accounts Image: Sector Accounts	📀 MyID Management Console					-	
Implementation Implementation Implementation Actions Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation Implementation	📀 File Action View Window Help					- 8 ×	
▼ Subhigiscidemo.com First Name Last Name Description > Authologiscidemo.com Adianna.canclini Adianna.canclini Company Groups > Subhin Anny Lasson Anny Last Name Description > Second To User Accounts Anny Lasson Anny Last Name Second To User Accounts > Second To User Account Anny Lasson Anny Last Name Description > Second To User Account Anny Lasson Anny Lasson Second To User Account > Second To User Account Second To User Account Second To User Account Second To User Account > Second To User Account Second To User Account Second To User Account Second To User Account > Second To User Account Second To User Account Second To User Account Account Second To User Account > Wess Second To User Account Second To User Account Account Second To User Account > Second To User Account Second To User Account Account Second To User Account Account > Second To User Account Mangement Second To User Account	🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬						
→ S authogicademo.com Account Name Pist Name Description → S authogicademo.com Advianna Cuclini Account → Buttin Account Name Treads → Buttin Anny Larson Anny Larson → Company Groups Anatebauarnan Actable Warnan → Bottin Artenet Victos Anny Larson Advianna → S Company Groups Artenet Victos Anny Larson Adviance → S Company Groups Artenet Victos Anny Larson Adviance → S Company Groups Artebeaumanna Actable Warnan → S France S andrianzico Auberta Crico → S Stelland S auberta S auberta Crico → S Stelland S betine.shepeard Betine Shepeard → S Stelland S betine.shepeard Shepeard Shepeard → S Reles Viers Viers Phase Maagement → S Reles Viers Viers Phase Maagement → S Reles Viers Viers Phase Maagement → S Reles Viers Viers Viers			nts in container Engla	nd		Actions	
	> ∰ authlogicsdemo.com > @ Authlogicsdervers > @ Builtin > @ Company Groups > @ Company Users > @ Company Users > @ Company Users > @ France > @ France > @ Terland > @ Italy > @ Scatland > @ Wates > @ Wates > @ Wates > @ Users Users > @ Rems > @ Applications > @ Applications	disiana.canclini international	Adrianna Ame Anny Arabela Ardenia Arluene Arly Athene Auberta	Canclini Threats Larason Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Uzdygan Grieshaber Crisco	Description	Search for User Accounts Search for User Account Metrich Users Add User Account View New Window from Here Refresh Export Lit Help Help Inable Disable User Account Management Gin Management One Time Code Management Viukiey OTP Management Viukiey OTP Management Detate Detate Poperties	



3. Click **YubiKey One Time Code Management**, in the **Actions** pane, or from rightclicking the account (or accounts).



4. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
Static PIN method What method do you wish to use to create a PIN for the user, if any?	
The users AD password can be used instead of a PIN or the administrator can manually specify a PIN. Alternatively, a PIN can be automatically generated or not required at all for OTP only validation.	
Use AD password as PIN	
O Manually Specified PIN	
<u>A</u> utomatically Generate PIN	
No PIN / Password required - OTP only	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	1



5. Choose the Static PIN Method.

The following PIN options exist:

- Use AD Password as PIN The user's Active Directory password is used instead of a PIN.
- Manually Specified PIN The administrator manually specifies a PIN.

If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, this option is not available.

- Automatically Generate PIN The PIN is automatically generated.
- No PIN / Password required OTP only The PIN is not required at all for OTP only validation.

This option is available only if you enabled it through Global settings.

6. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
YubiKey OTP user detail instruction email YubiKey OTP usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	
 <u>D</u>on't output YubiKey OTP user details <u>Email YubiKey OTP user details</u> Send to Email Addresses: ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com 	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	el

7. Select the delivery method for One Time Code settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be printed or emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

8. Click Next.





9. If you are manually specifying the PIN, enter the user's PIN and confirm the PIN.

(YubiKey OTP User I	Management Wizard		×
	Personal Identification I and set a new PIN for the us		
OTP.The PIN can be	e achieved by requiring a us entered before, after or in th se a PIN, enter a PIN in both		r with their
	Enter the new PIN: •••• Minimum PIN Length is 4 dig	Re-enter new PIN: •••• its between 0 and 9.	
	[< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

10. Click Next.

() YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
YubiKey OTP user options Configure the YubiKey OTP settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for YubiKey OTP	
User must change PIN at next logon	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	*

11. Configure YubiKey One Time Code user options.

You can set an account so that the next time the user logins with this account, the user is forced to change the PIN at the next logon.



12. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	\times
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\YubiKeyOtpUserPINTempla	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

13. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

14. Click Next.

𝔍 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the YubiKey OTP user information to the directory?	
The YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the YubiKey OTP user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	el



15. Click Next.

🥑 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	Х
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new YubiKey OTP user information.	
Update Progress - Updating YubiKey OTP information for the user account "ame.threats" Done. - Sending email to "ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. The YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard is complete.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish Cance	

16. Click Finish.



5.7.10 Multi-Factor devices assigned to a user account

Users can enroll their MFA device or devices through the self-service portal or through the MyID Windows Desktop Agent. You can view the devices assigned to the user by using the MyID MMC.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU and user account to manage.
- 2. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.
- 3. Select the Devices tab.

IDO	Push	Grid	One Time	Code	YubiKey OTP
General	AD F	assword	Devices	Eme	rgency Override
Devices					
Device:	Yut	oico YubiKey	- Black Yubico	YubiKey	device 🗸 🗸
Name:	Bla	ck Yubico Yu	ubiKey device		
		Device Enab	bled		
Device	ID: vvc	vjuvknllc			
Type:	Yub	ico YubiKey			
Registra	tion: Man	ual			
Last use	d: 05 F	ebruary 202	4 15:10:41		
					<u>R</u> emove
Authentica	ator App S	Security			
🗹 Requ	uire Biome	tric Seed			

Each user can have up to ten Multi-Factor Authentication devices. You can view any device assigned to a user by selecting it as a **Device**.

You can enable or disable each device as needed. You may want to do this if the device is temporarily misplaced.

You can also enforce the user to provide biometrics when using access tokens that support biometric validation.

5.7.11 Managing user passwords

You can manage user passwords using the MMC. The extent to which you can manage a user's password depends on whether the user is imported from the Active Directory, or if they are an external MFA user.





ne.threats Pr	operties		
FIDO	Push	Grid	YubiKey OTP
General	AD Password	Devices	Temporary Access
Reset Pass	word		
	user's password in A Vault, if enabled.	ctive Directory a	nd update it in the
New Pas	sword:		
Confirm P	assword:		
Usern	nust change password	d at next logon	Reset Password
Server Pas	sword Vault		
AD Passv	vord stored in Server I	Password Vault:	Yes
			Remove
Randomise	Password		
Rando	omise Password every	0 days	Randomise <u>N</u> ow
		ок с	Cancel Apply

5.7.11.1 Managing an Active Directory user's password

To manage an Active Directory user's password

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) that you want to manage.
- 3. Click **Properties** in the **Actions** pane.



4. Select the **AD Password** tab.

From here, you can:

- Reset the user's password.
 See section 5.7.11.2, Resetting an Active Directory user's password.
- See if the password is in the MyID Sever Password Vault.

See section 5.7.11.3, Managing an Active Directory user's password in the *MyID Password Vault*.

Configure password randomization.
 See section 5.7.11.4, Managing an Active Directory user's password randomization.

5.7.11.2 Resetting an Active Directory user's password

To reset an Active Directory user's password:

- 1. In the AD Password tab, type a New Password and confirm it by typing it again.
- 2. If you want the user to change the password when they next log in, select **User must** change password at next logon.
- 3. Click Reset Password.

Note: Users can reset their own passwords in the Self Service Portal; for more information, see the *Resetting your password* section in the **Self Service Portal User Guide**.

5.7.11.3 Managing an Active Directory user's password in the MyID Password Vault

Note: To enable the MyID Password Vault, you must set the **Enable MyID Password Vault** setting in the Domain Properties. For more information, see section *5.3.1*, *Domain Properties dialog*.

If the Active Directory user's password is in the MyID Server Password Vault, **AD Password** stored in Server Password Vault is set to Yes in the **AD Password** tab. If otherwise, it is set to No.

If the Active Directory user's password is in the MyID Server Password Vault, you can remove it by clicking **Remove**.

5.7.11.4 Managing an Active Directory user's password randomization

Note: To enable randomized passwords, and to configure how often the passwords are randomized, you must set the **Randomise AD Passwords every** *x* **days** setting in the Domain Properties. For more information, see section 5.3.1, *Domain Properties dialog.*

To enable the user for randomized passwords, on the **AD Password** tab, enable **Randomise Passwords every** *x* days.

To randomize the user's password immediately, click **Randomise now**.





5.7.11.5 Managing an external MFA user's password

External.User.Example Properties							
General	Password	Devices	Temporary Acces	s FIDO	Push		
	r Password sword stored		Password Vault: N				
				Rer	nove		
		Г	ОК	Cancel	A	pply	

To manage an external MFA user's password:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) that you want to manage.
- 3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.
- 4. Select the **Password** tab.

If the external MFA user's password is in the MyID Server Password Vault, **Password** stored in Server Password Vault is set to Yes. If otherwise, it is set to No.

5. If the external MFA user's password is in the MyID Server Password Vault, to remove it, click **Remove**.



- 5.7.12 Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)
 - 1. Ensure that **Allow Temporary Access Codes** is enabled on the global settings General tab.

For more information, see section 5.2.1, General tab.

- 2. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 3. Select the user account (or accounts) that you want to manage.
- 4. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.
- 5. Select the **Temporary Access** tab.

ame.threats Properties	×
General AD Password Devices Temporary Access FIDO Pus	h
Usage and Expiry	
(e) Expire after 3 logins or 22/03/2024 14:04:48	
 Expire after 3 logins Expire after 22/03/2024 14:04:48 	
Code Type	
Use Active Directory password	
O Use static PIN / Password	
Random Code Random Word Clear	
OK Cancel Ap	oply





ame.threats Properties	×
General AD Password Devices Temporary Access FIDO Push	
Usage and Expiry Enable Temporary Access Code Expire after 3 logins or 22/03/2024 14:04:48 Expire after 3 logins Expire after 22/03/2024 14:04:48	
Code Type Use Active Directory password Use static PIN / Password phosphonic Random Code Random Word Qlear	
OK Cancel Apply	y

6. Enable the Enable Temporary Access Code option.

Select when temporary access codes are automatically disabled. Options include at a specific date and time, after a specific number of uses or both; the default is both.

You can configure the user to utilize their existing Active Directory password as a temporary access code as it is something they should already know.

Alternatively, specify a PIN or a password for the user of at least six digits. To assist in choosing a PIN or password you can click the **Random Code** or **Random Word** buttons to create one for you.

7. Click Apply or OK to save the configured settings for the user account.

5.7.12.1 Known issues

IKB-441 – Unable to carry out an offline logon after using a temporary access code

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, if you use a temporary access code before going offline, all cached credentials are cleared, preventing you from carrying out an offline logon with either biometric or non-biometric FIDO devices, even if you have successfully logged in with FIDO devices before.



- 5.7.13 Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)
 - 1. Ensure that **Allow Temporary Access Codes** is enabled on the global settings General tab.

For more information, see section 5.2.1, General tab.

- 2. Load the Web Management Portal and select the user account to manage.
- 3. Enable the Enable Temporary Access Code option.

ి 🔲 😯 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+						-	0	×
	no.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	Aø	☆	CD.	£≞	Ē	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~		0
	RESET PASSWORD							*	Q
	Password								0
	New password								0
	Confirm								_
	Confirm password								+
	Reset								
	Reset								
	TEMPORARY ACCESS Code								
	Expiry							- 1	
	Number of logins or time period							- 1	
	Access Code Type							- 1	
	Use static PIN / Password 🗸							- 1	
	Code							- 1	
	phosphonic							- 1	
	Random Code Save								
									ŝ

4. Select if the temporary access code expires after a certain number or logons, a period of time, or both.



5. You can configure the user to utilize their existing Active Directory password as a temporary access code as it is something they should already know.

Alternatively, specify a PIN or a password for the user of at least six digits. To assist in choosing a PIN or password you can click **Random Code** for a random temporary access code.

: 🗆	💽 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+						-	0	×
← C		no.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	A۵	公	¢	£≣	Ē	~~		Ø
		RESET PASSWORD							^	Q
		Password								0
		New password								•
		Confirm								_
		Confirm password								+
		Reset								
		TEMPORARY ACCESS					×			
		Enable Temporary Access Code								
		Expiry							1	
		Number of logins or time period 🗸							1	
		Access Code Type								
		Use static PIN / Password 🗸							1	
		Code								
		4450140810								
		Random Code Save								
									•	63

6. Click Save.

5.7.13.1 Known issues

 IKB-441 – Unable to carry out an offline logon after using a temporary access code

When the **Manage the Windows password** option is enabled on the **FIDO2** tab of the global settings, if you use a temporary access code before going offline, all cached credentials are cleared, preventing you from carrying out an offline logon with either biometric or non-biometric FIDO devices, even if you have successfully logged in with FIDO devices before.



5.8 Roles

The MyID Authentication Server provides administrators with the ability to assign rights to users for MyID administrative functions and product features. Users can be designated as Administrators and Operators.

Image: See Action Yee Worker Let a Count Name Image: Second Action Second Image: Second Action Second <	O MyID Management Console				-	
Implify PSM & MFA Administrators Additional field Actions Implify PSM & MFA Security Name Domains Additional field Administrators Implify PSM & MFA Security Name Domains Email Administrators Administrators Administrators Administrators Administrators Administrators Administrators Administrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Secure Name Secure Na	⊙ Eile Action View Window H	elp				_ 8 ×
 ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Balinin ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Balinin ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Balinin ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Balinin ■ Authogics dema.com ■ Authogics	🔶 🏟 🙇 📰 📑					
> ■ Indend ● Dopt Litt > ■ Scotland ● Dopt Litt > ■ Zimbabne ● Dopt Litt > ■ Zimbabne ● Dopt Litt > ■ Manged Service Account ● Dopt Litt > ■ Manged Service Account ● Dopt Litt > ■ Zimbabne ● Dopt Litt > ■ Dopt Litt ● Dopt Litt > ■ Dopt Litt ● Dopt Litt	 Domains authlogicsdeme.com Authlogics Servers Builtin Company Groups Company Users England France 	Account Name & admin & admin_msa	Domain authlogicsdemo.com authlogicsdemo.com		Administrators User Permission View Alert Recipients View Refresh Users View	•
	 > 20 Ireland > 20 Ireland > 20 Scotland > 20 Scotland > 20 Scotland > 20 Scotland > 20 Vales > 20 Tumbabre > 20 Manged Service Account > 20 Users > 20 Leters > 20 Applications > 20 Fatemal identities > 20 Applications > 20 Mannistrators > 20 Mules > 20 Mules > 20 Mules > 20 Mules > 20 Policies 					

Administrators can fully administer MyID using the MyID Management Console and can perform day-to-day operational functions using the Web Management Portal.

Operators can access the Web Management Portal, which provides day-to-day operational functions, but they do not have access to the MyID Management Console.

If you have MyID PSM and you do not want to protect every account with PSM, user accounts that should be protected by PSM can be specified using the PSM Users role.

Note: Active Directory groups are created automatically for Administrators and Operators and are assigned to the roles by default. For all other roles, an Active Directory group must be created manually first.

You can:

• Use groups with roles.

See section 5.8.1, Active Directory Group types for roles.

• Work with administrator roles.

See section 5.8.2, Administrator role views.

Manage administrative roles.

See section 5.8.3, Managing administrative roles.

• Manage the role for PSM users.

See section 5.8.4, Managing the Password Security Management Users role.





5.8.1 Active Directory Group types for roles

Both Global and Universal Security groups can be used with all MyID Roles. Group nesting is supported – groups may contain other groups.

In addition, both Global and Universal Distribution groups can be used with the MyID Administrators Role to allow people to receive administrative alerts, but not have administrative permissions. For more information, see section *5.8.2*, *Administrator role views*.

For multi-domain forests, the groups can be created in any domain in the forest. It is recommended that Universal groups are used in multi-domain forests so that Global Catalog servers can be contacted to check role membership, otherwise, Domain Controllers from other domains may need to be contacted, which can affect performance depending on the infrastructure.



5.8.2 Administrator role views

The Administrator Role is dual purpose and therefore has the following views:

- User Permissions View User accounts that have MyID Administrative permissions.
- Alert Recipients View Email addresses that should receive Admin Alerts.

To toggle these views:

1. In the MyID Management Console, under Roles, expand Administrators.

	delp				- 🗆 X
	Administrators All Ac Account Name & admin & admin_msa & Administrator	counts in Rote Domain authlogiscidemo.com authlogiscidemo.com	Email Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com	Actions Administrators User Permission View Alet Recipients View Refersh Users View New Window from Here Image: Sepont List Image: Help	
c					

2. In the Actions pane, select the view that you want.

MyID Management Console						- 🗆 ×
<u> <u> </u> </u>	lelp					_ 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬 🖬						
MyID PSM & MFA	Administrators Alert Recipients in Role Actio				Actions	
	Recipient Name & Administrator	cipients in Role Domain authlogicsdemo.com	Email Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com	Type Active Directory User	Actions Administrators User Permission View Allert Recipients View Refresh Recipients View New Window from Here Eport Lst Help	
< >>				,		

This allows you to determine the resultant set of users of that case.



This feature may be useful if your admin personnel have split role user accounts and need to use their admin user account to perform administrative tasks but need to receive Admin Alerts on a non-admin user account.

Administrative Permissions can only be assigned to Active Directory User Accounts through either direct membership of the MyID Administrators group, or by being a member of a nested **Security group** (Global or Universal). Permissions are not assigned to Active Directory Contacts or through membership of a Distribution Group. The existence of an email address on a user account or group has no effect.

Admin Alerts can be sent to Active Directory User Accounts, Contacts or Groups (Global or Universal, Security or Distribution) that have an email address configured. They can be direct members of the Authlogics Administrators group, or a member of a nested Security or Distribution group (Global or Universal). If a nested group does not have an email address configured on it, the members of the group are processed individually, including other nested groups. However, if a group does have an email address configured on it, the email address of the group is used, and the members of the group are ignored, leaving the email system (for example, Microsoft Exchange) to deliver the email to the group members.

To use split role user accounts for Admin Alerts, create a Distribution group in the Active Directory, add the non-admin user accounts to it, then add the group to the Authlogics Administrators group.

When using Microsoft Exchange, create a Mail Enabled Distribution group, add the nonadmin user accounts to it, then add the group to the Authlogics Administrators group. MyID then sends Admin Alerts to the group and not directly to the member.



5.8.3 Managing administrative roles

Role membership is managed through the corresponding Active Directory groups. These groups are created during the directory configuration and can be renamed and moved to different OUs as needed. You *must not* delete these groups.

Non-administrative roles are optional and the group filtering for the role can be enabled or disabled as needed.

Role members cannot be added and removed using the MyID Management Console – this must be done by editing the appropriate Windows group using either the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC, or the Local Users and Groups MMC.

Note: When assigning Active Directory groups to MyID administrative roles, the Active Directory groups must already exist in the domain.

To assign Active Directory groups to MyID administrative roles:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Roles node.







2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features and functionality. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators Browse	
Operator Users Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Operators	
OK Cancel Apply	

3. To select administrators, click **Browse** in the Administrator Users section.

Select Group		×
Select this object type:		
Group		Object Types
From this location:		
Entire Directory		Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
Authlogics Administrators		<u>C</u> heck Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK	Cancel

4. Locate the Active Directory group.



5. Click OK.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features and functionality.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators	
Browse	
Operator Users	
Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO \Authlogics Operators	
Browse	
OK Cancel Apply	

6. To select operators, click **Browse** in the Operator Users section.

Select Group		×
Select this object type:		
Group		Object Types
From this location:		
Entire Directory		Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
Authlogics Operators		Check Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	ОК	Cancel

- 7. Locate the Active Directory group.
- 8. Click OK.



5.8.4 Managing the Password Security Management Users role

To assign an Active Directory group to the MyID Password Security Management Users role:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Roles node.

> Policies Agement Console		- 🗆 X	
File Action View Window	Help	- 6 >	
🔶 🔿 🙇 🖬 🗟 🖬			
MyID PSM & MFA	Roles Authentication Server Roles	Actions	
> III Realms	Administrators	Roles	
Applications	PSM Users	View •	
> dr External Identities	PSM Exclusion	New Window from Here	
 Roles Administrators 		Refresh	
Operators		Export List	
> SM Users		Properties 1	
> iii PSM Exclusion		Help	
> 📓 Policies		iii nop	
		1	

2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features and functionality. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators Browse	
Operator Users Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Operators Browse	
OK Cancel Apply	




3. Select the **PSM** tab.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM	
Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group Provide PSM protection to members of the group only, otherwise, all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected.	
Browse Remediation and Alerts Exclusion	
Enable Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group	
Remediation and Alerts will not be actioned, however, real-time policy checks will still apply when a password is changed.	
Browse	
OK Cancel Apply	

4. Enable the Enable Password Security Management Users group option.

5. Click Browse.

Select Group		×
Select this object type: Group		Object Types
From this location:		
Entire Directory		Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
Authlogics PSM Users		<u>C</u> heck Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	ОК	Cancel

6. Locate the Active Directory Password Policy group.



7. Click OK.

Roles Properties	\times
Administrative Roles PSM	
Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group Provide PSM protection to members of the group only, otherwise, all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics PSM Users Browse	
Remediation and Alerts Exclusion Enable Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group Remediation and Alerts will not be actioned, however, real-time policy checks will still apply when a password is changed.	
Browse OK Cancel Apply	

8. Click **OK**.

To view the members, in either the **Roles** node or the **PSM Users** node, in the Action pane, click **Refresh**.

5.9 Policies

The MyID Authentication Server provides administrators with the ability to manage policies.

You can manage the following type of policy:

• Access control policies See section *5.9.1*, *Access control policies*.

5.9.1 Access control policies

Access control policies allow you to specify who can access RADIUS authentication.

5.9.1.1 Adding an access control policy

To add an access control policy:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, under the **Policies** node, highlight the **Access Control Policy** node.
- 2. Click Add Policy in the Actions pane.

The Add New Policy dialog opens.





Add New Policy X
Apply policy to requests from the following IP addresses:
Apply policy to the following groups of users:
Browse
Enable the above policy for RADIUS OK Cancel

3. Type a **Policy Name**.

This field is mandatory.

4. Type a Policy Priority.

This must be a value between 1 and 255.

Policies are evaluated in order of priority – if a user matches multiple policies, the policy with the highest priority takes effect; lower numbers represent a higher priority.

This field is mandatory.

 If you want this policy to apply only to specific IP address, enable the Apply policy to requests from the following IP addresses option and type one or more IP addresses.

If you enter more than one IP address, each new IP address must be on a new line.

Note: Only IP addresses are supported; DNS names in this field cause RADIUS authentication to fail.

6. If you want this policy to apply only to specific groups:

Note: These groups must be configured in the Active Directory *before* you add the new policy.





- a. Enable the Apply policy to the following groups of users option.
- b. Click **Browse** and select the groups to which you want the policy to apply.

Select this object type:	
Groups	Object Types
rom this location:	
Entire Directory	Object Types Object Types Locations o select (examples): Check Names OK Cancel
inter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>)	:
nter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>)	
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>)	
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>)	

7. If you want this policy to be used for RADIUS, enable the **Enable the above policy for RADIUS** option.

If you enable this option, you can view and edit the RADIUS options of this policy in the RADIUS tab of the global settings. For more information, see the section *5.2.2*, *RADIUS tab*.

🔚 Add New Policy			×
Policy Name:	Policy Priority:		
MyPolicy1 Apply policy to requests from the follow	1 owing IP addresses:		
192.168.200.3 192.168.200.4			
Apply policy to the following groups of	of users:		
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\MyID Authentication AUTHLOGICSDEMO\MyID Authentication			Browse
Enable the above policy for RADIUS		OK	Cancel

8. Click **OK**.





5.9.1.2 Editing an access control policy

To edit an access control policy:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, under the **Policies** node, open the **Access Control Policy** node.
- 2. Highlight the access control policy that you want to edit and click **Edit** in the **Actions** pane, or right click the policy and click **Edit**.

5.9.1.3 Deleting an access control policy

To delete an access control policy:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, under the **Policies** node, open the **Access Control Policy** node.
- 2. Highlight the access control policy that you want to delete and click **Delete** in the **Actions** pane, or right click the policy and click **Delete**.



5.10 The Web Management Portal

The MyID Web Management Portal provides operational staff with an easy-to-use webbased interface to perform common administrative tasks. Members of the Operators Role may only use the Web Management Portal. The Web Management Portal UI is well suited to tablet and touch-based devices.

The Web Management Portal includes dashboards to provide a high-level overview of core Password Security and Multi-Factor Authentication events. The dashboard also provides administrators with the ability to generate reports.

V 📀 Web Management Portal X +				- 🗆 X
← → ♂ ⊘ Not secure https://server	authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/users			☆ 🛛 💿 :
(MyiD) =				A administrator 🗸 🍐
System	Isers			
+++ Dashboards ^ Password Security	search			authlogicsdemo.com 🗸
Multi-Factor Authentication	Account 👻	First name	Last Name	
System Status	eda.delisle	Eda	Delisle	
Reports	bettine.shepeard	Bettine	Shepeard	
ల్ల Users	auberta.crisco	Auberta	Crisco	
	athene.grieshaber	Athene	Grieshaber	
	arly.uzdygan	Arly	Uzdygan	
	arluene.feigenbaum	Arluene	Feigenbaum	
	ardenia.ruchti	Ardenia	Ruchti	
	arabela.warman	Arabela	Warman	
	anny.larason	Anny	Larason	

Day-to-day user management functions available through the Web Management Portal include:

- Viewing all MyID events for the selected user.
- Enabling or disabling an account.
- Unlocking an account.
- Updating a Mobile / Cellular phone number.
- Resetting user passwords.
- Configuring Temporary Access Codes.
- Viewing, enabling, disabling, and resyncing MFA devices.
- Configuring MFA settings.
- Resetting a Grid Pattern.
- · Resetting a Phrase answers.
- Resetting a One Time Code PIN.
- Verifying a One Time Code.
- Performing two-way identification.



The Web Management Portal does *not* allow the following actions:

- Modification of the global settings.
- Adding new user accounts.
- Provisioning MFA technologies.
- Changing the Pattern size.
- Changing logon times.

The Web Management Portal is compatible with multiple web browsers including Microsoft Edge, Google Chrome, Firefox, and Safari. Internet Explorer may function but is no longer recommended or supported.

This section contains information on:

- Accessing the portal. See section 5.10.1, Accessing the Web Management Portal.
- Using the portal. See section 5.10.2, Using the Web Management Portal.
- Viewing user events. See section *5.10.3*, *Viewing all user events*.
- Viewing and disabling devices.

See section 5.10.4, Viewing and disabling devices for a user account.

- Removing devices. See section 5.10.5, Removing a device from a user account.
- Performing two-way identification.
 See section section *5.10.6*, *Two-way identification*.

5.10.1 Accessing the Web Management Portal

The Web Management Portal is accessed using Forms-based authentication with MFA or passwords, or Windows-based authentication.

There is a start menu shortcut on the MyID server for easy access. Alternatively, you can use the following URL from any remote location:

https://<servername>:14443/admin

Where <servername> is the name of your MyID Authentication Server.

The portal can be accessed using HTTPS on port TCP:14443.

The installation process configures a self-signed SSL certificate for use with the MyID Authentication Server. You can replace this certificate with one from an internal or third-party trusted root when needed.





5.10.2 Using the Web Management Portal

When using the Web Management Portal, start by selecting the domain in the forest that you want to administer. If there is only a single domain then it is selected automatically.

To search for a particular user, or to narrow down the list of users, enter some search criteria in the Search box and press enter.

To make changes to a user account, click a user to view and edit the account details.

•	♥ Web Management Portal × +		-		×
←	→ C ON Not secure https://serv	ver.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	☆ 🛛	•	:
Sy	stem	Account Ame Threats (ame.threats)			^
	Dashboards ^ Password Security Multi-Factor Authentication System Status Reports Users	ACCOUNT DETAILS C Account is Disabled Account is Locked Out Mobile Number			
Us උ		Save			ļ
	Events				
	Devices	RESET PASSWORD			
	Pattern	RESET PASSWORD			
	One Time Code	Password			
	Two-Way ID	New password			
		Confirm			
		Confirm password			+

When you have finished making changes to the user account, click Save.

A notification at the top of the console displays if the update is successfully saved.

*	Web Management Portal × +		-	-		×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://server	r.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	☆		•	:
Sys	stem /	Account Ame Threats (ame.threats)				^
	Dashboards					
	Password Security	ACCOUNT DETAILS				
	Multi-Factor Authentication					
	System Status	Updated user details successfully.		×		
	Reports	Account is Disabled				
	Users	Account is Locked Out				
Use	ər	Mobile Number				
ዶ	Account					
	Events	Save				
	Devices					
	Pattern					
	One Time Code	RESET PASSWORD				
	Two-Way ID					
		Password				
		New password				-

A record of changes made to user accounts is kept in the MyID Server Application Event Log.



5.10.3 Viewing all user events

Every user-related event is registered in the Windows Events log on the MyID Authentication Server or Domain Controller that processed the request. In environments containing multiple MyID Authentication Servers and Domain Controllers, it can be challenging to locate the server containing the required log data.

The Web Management Portal Events view consolidates events from all servers into a single view for each user.

To view a user's events:

- 1. Select the user account for which you want to access events.
- 2. In the User section, click Events.

•	♥ Web Management Portal × +				-		×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://serve	er.authlogicsdemo.cor	n:14443,	/admin#/user/ame.threats/events	\$) :
Sys	tem	Events (am	e.th	reats)			
	Dashboards						
	Password Security	Last 7 Days				-	
	Multi-Factor Authentication	Created -	Id	Message	Computer		
	System Status Reports	2/13/2024 2:34:29 PM	1800	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.cc	m	
	Users	2/13/2024 2:32:25 PM	1800	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.cc	m	
Use	er Account	2/9/2024 9:46:47 AM	1800	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.co	m	
Þ	Events	2/9/2024 9:46:47 AM	1770	The YubiKey OTP PIN update for user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has completed successfully.	server.authlogicsdemo.co	m	
	Devices Pattern	2/9/2024 9:23:34 AM	1800	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.co	m	
	C Not seeur Natescore <						
Construction Computer Compu							



5.10.4 Viewing and disabling devices for a user account

A user account can be linked to up to ten devices running a soft token app. These can be assigned through the Web Management Portal, the MMC or the User Self Service Portal.

To view or disable a device:

- 1. Select the user account that owns the device.
- 2. In the User section, click **Devices**.

•	🤉 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙 🕂						-	- 1		×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://server	authlogics	demo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threa	ts/devices			☆		0	:
Sys	tem	Device	es (ame.threats)							^
	Dashboards ^									
	Password Security		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status				
	Multi-Factor Authentication		Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired				
	System Status		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes					
	Reports									
	Users									
Use	r									
<u>م</u>	Account									
	Events									
Ū	Devices									
	Pattern									
	One Time Code									
	Two-Way ID									
										-

3. Select the device to modify.

•	📀 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+			-	
←	→ C ONot secure https://se	erver.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user	/ame.threats/devices		☆ 🛛]
му		=			A adminis	s
Sys +†+	s tem Dashboards ^	Devices (ame.threats))			
	Password Security	Device	Credential	Enabled	Status	
	Multi-Factor Authentication	Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired	
	System Status	Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes		
	Reports					
	Users	Edit Device Remove Device				
Use	er					
	Account					
	Events					
0	Devices					
	Pattern					
	One Time Code					





4. Click Edit Device.

~	Web Management Portal × +		-	- 0	×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://server	authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats/devices/edit/1681892112452374	☆		D :
Му	iD =		A adm	ninistrate	òr~ ^
Sys	tem	dit Device (ame.threats)			
+†+	Dashboards ^ Password Security Multi-Factor Authentication	EDIT DEVICE			
	System Status	Device			
Ē	Reports	Apple iOS			
ĉ	Users	Credential			
Use	r	1681892112452374 Enabled			
٩	Account	Yes 🗸			
7	Events	Save			
0	Devices				
88	Pattern				
0	One Time Code				-

You are now viewing the details of the device.

- 5. To change the enabled status of the device:
 - To disable the device, set Enabled to ${\tt No.}$
 - To enable the device, set **Enabled** to Yes.
- 6. To confirm the enabled status of the device, click Save.

~ (🔉 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+				- 0	×
~	→ C ONot secure https;	//server.authlogic	sdemo.com:14443/admin#/use	er/ame.threats/devices		☆ 🛛 🏼	:
My	iD	=				A administrator∨	
Syst		Device	es (ame.threats	3)			
	Dashboards ^ Password Security	Device	e updated successfully.			×	
	Multi-Factor Authentication System Status		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status	
	Reports	0	Apple IOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	No	paired	
	Users	0	Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes		
Use	r						
	Account						
	Events						
۵	Devices						
	Pattern						
	One Time Code						

The enabled status of the device is now changed.



5.10.5 Removing a device from a user account

To remove a device:

- 1. Select the user account from which you want to remove the device.
- 2. In the User section, click **Devices**.

•	Web Management Portal × +					- 0	×
÷	→ C ONOT secure https://ser	ver.authlogic	sdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ar	me.threats/devices		☆ 🛛 🌖	÷
Sys	stem	Device	es (ame.threats)				^
+†‡	Dashboards						1
	Password Security		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status	
	Multi-Factor Authentication	0	Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired	
	System Status		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes		
	Reports						
e,	Users						
Use	er						
٩	Account						
P	Events						
۵	Devices						
88	Pattern						
0	One Time Code						
۵	Two-Way ID						
0	One Time Code						

- 3. Select the device that you want to remove.
- 4. Click Remove Device.

•	📀 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+					- 0	×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://sec	rver.authlogics	demo.com:14443/admin#/user/a	me.threats/devices			☆ 🛛 🍕) :
Му	riD	-	Confirm Remove Device		×		은 administrator	*
	tem	Device	Are you sure you wish to remov	e this device?				
	Dashboards		Are you sure you wan to remo					
	Password Security				Cancel Remove	Enabled	Status	
	Multi-Factor Authentication				Cancel	Yes	paired	
	System Status		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc		Yes		
	Reports							
	Users	Edit De	rice Remove Device					
	er 👘							
	Account							
	Events							
	Devices							
	Pattern							
	One Time Code							
	Two-Way ID							





5. Click **Remove** to confirm that you want to remove the device.

	Web Management Portal	×	+								-	Ø	×
~	C 8 Not secure https://s	ierver.a	uthlogicsdemo.c	com:14443/admin	#/user/ame.threats/devices			$A^h=\underline{r}\underline{r}$	Φ	£*=	@ %		0
(M	yiD	=								음 Ac	Iministrato	ř.	Q 0
	stem	De	evices (a	ame.threa	ats)								0
	Dashboards ^												+
	Password Security		Device remove	ed successfully.							\times		
	Multi-Factor Authentication			Device		Credential	Enabled	Status					
	System Status											. 1	
	Reports			Apple IOS		1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired					
	, Users												
Us	er												
	Account											_	
	Events											_	
	Devices												
	Pattern												
	One Time Code												
	Two-Way ID												
													1

The device is now removed.

5.10.6 Two-way identification

Note: The visible options for a user depend on what is enabled for the user. If you do not have Grid patterns or One Time Codes enabled, this page is not visible.

To carry out two-way identification, you ask the user to prove their identity to you, and then prove your identity to the user:

- 1. Select the user account for which you want to carry out two-way identification.
- 2. In the User section, click Two-Way ID

🔮 п 💿 Web Management Portal	× +	- • ×
← C	llogicsdemo.com:14443/admin≢/user/ame.threats/two-way-id	⊕ ☆ ☆ … ■
MyiD MFA	=	Administrator ~
System	Two-Way ID (ame.threats)	
Mutli Factor Authentication System Status 과 Reports 옷, Users User	PROVE USER IDENTITY BY ASKING FOR A ONE TIME CODE (OTC) User's One Time Code Send Token Check OTC	
Account Events Devices Pattern Phrase One Time Code A Two Way ID	PROVE YOUR IDENTITY BY PROVIDING A GRID ROW User Denice Coogle Android Row Number To Use 2 v User Denice Time 10:52:52 (UTC+4000) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London v	
		•

3. In the **Prove user identity by asking for a One Time Code (OTC)** section, if you want to send an OTC through an SMS or e-mail, click **Send Token**.



To configure sending a token through SMS or email, set the **Delivery Method** on the Multi-Factor Token Delivery Settings page of the Grid User Management Wizard to SMS / Text or Email. For more information, see section 5.7.6, Setting up a user for Grid Pattern Authentication.

If the user has a device with One Time Codes or Grid patterns configured, they can use the OTC or Grid pattern from their device to verify themselves to you instead.

- 4. Type the user's token into the User's One Time Code text box.
- 5. Click Check OTC.
- 6. If the user's One Time Code was correct, a message appears that the user account was successfully validated.

The OTC for user account 'aaren.marius' was successfully validated.

 \times

This verifies the user's identity to you.

- 7. In the Prove your identity by providing a Grid row section, select a User Device.
- 8. Select a row of the Grid pattern from the drop-down list.
- 9. Click Generate Row.

The selected row of the user's current Grid pattern is displayed.

• IKB-445 – Proving your Identity by providing a Grid row works only when requiring a biometric seed is disabled on the user's device

The **Prove your Identity by providing a Grid row** feature, which allows you to carry out two-way identification by identifying yourself to a user, does not work when the **Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App** option is applied to the user's device on the Passwordless Authentication page of the User Management wizard or Add User Account wizard, or the **Require biometric seed** option is set in the **Devices** page of the user properties. If you want to use this feature, you must disable the biometric seed option and carry out a device resynchronization.

10. Tell the user the generated row. This verifies yourself to the user.



5.11 Web Management Portal dashboards

To use the Web Management Portal dashboards, in the System section of the Web Management Portal, click **Dashboards**.

The Dashboard is broken into the following categories:

· System Status.

See section 5.11.1, System Status.

• Multi-Factor Authentication – the availability of this is dependent on applied MFA and PSM licenses.

See section 5.11.2, Multi-Factor Authentication.

Password Security – the availability of this is dependent on applied MFA and PSM licenses.

See section 5.11.3, Password Security.

5.11.1 System Status

The System Status area of the Dashboards shows all the MyID Authentication servers, Domain Controllers, and applied licenses through the deployment.

Each server listing shows the role of the server in the environment (whether it is a MyID Authentication Server and/or a Domain Controller), the server's availability state, and lists MyID's ability to access the server's Windows Event Logs.

The license components show the applied licenses, the validity of the licenses, the quantities of the license assigned and used, as well as the license's expiry date.

•	Web Management Portal	× +						-	- 1		×
←	→ C ONot secure http:	s://server.a	uthlogicsdemo.com:14443	/admin#/system-dashboard				☆		0	:
Му	riD	=							و	, v	*
Sys	stem	10									
	Dashboards ^		SERVER.AUTHLOGICSDEI Authentication Server Active								
			Version						8		
	Multi-Factor Authentication		5.0.1100.0								
			SERVER.AUTHLOGICSDEI								
			Domain Controller Available	NO.COM							
Us	er		Remote Eventlog (Version Available, Connected (4.2								
			MULTI-FACTOR AUTHENT	TICATION LICENCES		PASSWORD SECURITY	MANAGEMENT LICENCES				
			1000 Users	17 Used	R	777 Users	3 Used		ß		
			Valid	Expires:		Valid	Expires:				-



5.11.2 Multi-Factor Authentication

The Multi-Factor Authentication dashboard shows a near-live view of:

• Authentication Requests – displays all valid and invalid MFA authentication requests over the selected period.

(all)		✓ Last 7 Days		
12				
9				
6				
3			_	

 Authentication Request By Type – breaks down successful authentication requests by MyID MFA authentication type.





• Users By Authentication Type – displays the total number of users who are provisioned to each MyID MFA authentication type.



 Users By Device – displays the percentages of device types that are provisioned to users.



Multi-Factor Authentication dashboards reflect the information across the Active Directory forest or for each domain over the selected period. All dashboard reports can be downloaded to SVG or CSV formats.



5.11.3 Password Security

The Password Security Dashboard shows a near-live view of:

• External Breaches – shows the password breaches for the organization according to the MyID Password Breach database.

acme.com					
400					
300					Ē
200					
100				 • _ • ((•	
0		•==•=•=•	!		

• Total Accounts at Risk – shows the number of accounts using breached or shared passwords as detected over the specified period.



• Failed Password Changes – shows the failed password changes and the reason for the password rejection over the selected time period.





• Users Accounts at Risk – shows all the accounts with passwords that are shared, breached, blank, or soon to expire. This dashboard also shows dormant accounts.

Accounts At Risk Latest		
(all)		~
		Shared
	 Shared Breached 	Account Name
35.0% 32.5%	 Blank Expiring 	carrottop
	 Expiring Dormant 	carrynation
		carygrant
		caseykasem
32.5%		caseystengel
		i≡ View All

If you click **View All**, all the accounts that fall under the highlighted category are displayed.

Password Security dashboards reflect the information across the Active Directory forest or for each domain over the selected period. All dashboard reports can be downloaded to SVG or CSV formats.



5.12 Customizing the portal interfaces

You can customize the portal interfaces in the following ways:

- Customize authentication for the Web Management Portal or the Self Service Portal. See section 5.12.1, Portal authentication type settings.
- Customize the IdP logon page.
 See section 5.12.2, IdP Logon Page customization.
- Customize the Self Service Portal.
 See section 5.12.3, SSP customization.
- Carry out advanced customization of the Self Service Portal.
 See section 5.12.4, Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization.

5.12.1 Portal authentication type settings

The Self Service Portal and Web Management Portal support both Windows Authentication and other forms of authentication – for example, One Time Codes and Grids.

A logon page can be displayed to require strong authentication using MyID supported MFA technologies or password. See section *5.4.3*, *Web Management Portal Properties* and section *5.4.2*, *Self Service Portal Properties* for details.

5.12.1.1 Using Deviceless OTP with non-Windows authentication

MyID Grid Pattern and Phrase questions can be displayed on the login page to cater for Deviceless OTP authentication. If Deviceless OTP authentication is not required, the logon challenge can be disabled on the logon page.

To allow this, enable the Allow deviceless option on the relevant portal.





5.12.2 IdP Logon Page customization

You can customize the branding look of the IdP logon page by editing settings in the appsettings.json file. This can be found at the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\appsettings.json

Item	Value	Details
LogoPath	/img/logo-colour-transparent.png	A full or relative
		path to a
		graphic file such
		as a company
		logo.
UserGuideUrl	https://www.intercede.com/download/myid-	A full or relative
	self-service-portal-user-guide-5-1	path to a
		downloadable
		user guide
		document.
PasswordLabelText	Password	Any custom text
		to help the user
		know which
		password is
		required; for
		example,
		Coprnet
		Password.

Note: The installer does *not* maintain backups of the appsettings.json files so manual backups should be taken.

Note: Editing other values in the appsettings.json files is not supported.





5.12.3 SSP customization

You can customize the branding look and other user interface features of the Self Service Portal page by editing settings in the appsettings.json file. This can be found at the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\appsettings.json

Item	Value	Details
Title	Self Service Portal	Any custom
		text. The
		title of the
		SSP web
		page.
DisplayText	Self Service Portal	Any custom
		text. This is
		displayed at
		the top of
		the SSP
		web page.
LogoPath	/ssp/img/myid-none-grey.png	A full or
		relative path
		to a graphic
		file such as
		a company
		logo.
UserGuideUrl	https://www.intercede.com/downloa	A full or
	d/myid-self-service-portal-user-	relative path
	guide-5-1	to a
		downloadab
		le user
		guide
		document.





Item	Value	Details
PasswordLabelText	Password	Any custom text to help the user know which password is required; for example, Coprnet Password.
IncreasedAccessibilityRequir ements	False	If set to True, this enables the high- contrast UI customizati on. For more information, see section 5.12.4, Advanced Self Service Portal UI customizati on.
ShowResetPinGridIndicators	True	If set to False, the user cannot choose to display the numbered indicators that appear when they click on the grid on the Grid Settings screen.

Note: The installer does *not* maintain backups of the appsettings.json files so manual backups should be taken.

Note: Editing other values in the appsettings.json files is not supported.



This is an example of the SSP with the Title set to My Title and the DisplayText set to My Display Text.



Note: While the content of the SSP appears in the primary language of the browser, assuming the language is supported, the Title and the DisplayText are not translated, and you must change them in the appsettings.json file. For information on which languages are supported, see the Language requirements section of the Self Service Portal User Guide.



5.12.4 Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization

You can carry out advanced customization of the Self Service Portal using CSS and JavaScript. The portal has built-in customization files where all customizations can be placed. These are in the following locations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\css\custom.css

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\js\custom.js

There is a high-contrast UI customization file for SSP in the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\css\highcontrast.css

To allow a more accessible, high contrast customization:

- 1. Update your custom CSS file:
 - If you already have UI customizations that you want to preserve, copy the contents of the SSP high-contrast.css file and add it into your custom.css.
 - If you do not have an existing UI customization, rename the SSP high-contrast.css file to custom.css.
- 2. Enable the SSP IncreasedAccessibilityRequirements flag.

For more information, see section 5.12.3, SSP customization.

5.12.4.1 Advanced Web Management Portal UI customization

You can customize the Web Management Portal using CSS. The portal has a built-in customization file where you can place customizations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\Admin\wwwroot\css\custom.css

5.12.4.2 Advanced IdP UI customization

You can customize the IdP login page using CSS. The portal has a built-in customization file where you can place customizations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\wwwroot\css\custom.css

There is a high-contrast UI customization file for IdP in the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\wwwroot\css\highcontrast.css

To allow a more accessible, high contrast customization, update your custom CSS file:

- If you already have UI customizations that you want to preserve, copy the contents of the IdP high-contrast.css file and add it into your custom.css.
- If you do not have an existing UI customization, rename the IdP high-contrast.css file to custom.css.





5.12.4.3 Advanced UI customization considerations

The web pages within the portal load the custom CSS and JS files automatically. The files are loaded last in the load order to allow custom code to override code in built-in functions if required.

Editing of any other files in the portal folder structure is *not* supported. The custom files may be replaced by future updates or upgrades and existing customizations may not be compatible with future product versions. Intercede is unable to provide product support for any third-party code placed in the custom.css or custom.js files and any additions to the files are done so at your own risk.

Note: The installer attempts to retain your custom.css and custom.js files, but you should always keep a backup of your custom files to ensure they are not lost after an upgrade.



5.13 RADIUS communication

The MyID Authentication Server leverages the Windows Network Policy Server role to provide RADIUS connectivity. This is a high performance and robust RADIUS server that allows you to configure a flexible RADIUS policy, including RADIUS proxy capabilities that can simplify migrations from other token solutions.

The MyID RADIUS server supports only PAP authentication from RADIUS client devices.

You can carry out RADIUS configuration in the MyID MMC as well as the Microsoft Network Policy Server MMC.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X		
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator Ap FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Police	e	
Policy Default ~		
RADIUS Options Open Network Policy Server		
Enable Mobile Push		
Require AD password before Mobile Push		
Disable Deviceless Logons		
Enabled 2-Step Logons (Password + OTP via Access-Challenge)		
Maximum time between steps: 60 🚖 seconds		
Enable RADIUS extensions		
Return AD password to support passwordless logons		
Reply-Message (18) for use with Access-Challenge:		
OK Cancel Apply		

This section contains information on:

- Mobile Push MFA.
- 2-step logons (Access-Challenge).
- · RADIUS extensions.
- · RADIUS server ports and protocols.
- Adding a RADIUS client.
- RADIUS policies.



5.13.1 Mobile Push MFA

You can enable and disable Mobile Push MFA through RADIUS to other mechanisms.

When a RADIUS request is received containing only a username, the MyID Authentication Server triggers a Mobile Push to the user's device only if the user is configured for Mobile Push. You may configure it so that a username and password is required before a Mobile Push notification is triggered; to do this, enable the **Require AD password before Mobile Push** option.

5.13.2 2-step logons (Access-Challenge)

RADIUS Access-Challenge is supported by some RADIUS clients. It allows for a two-step logon process where the client sends their username and password to the server for verification and the server responds with either an Access-Challenge or Access-Reject. If the client supports Access-Challenge, the user is prompted for a second set of credentials, for example an OTP, which are then sent to the server. The server then processes the username and OTP and responds with an Access-Accept (only if an Access-Challenge preceded the request) or Access-Reject.

5.13.3 RADIUS extensions

You can enable RADIUS extensions to send metadata from the server back to the RADIUS client. This can return the following:

- The user's Active Directory password to support single sign-on to certain applications such as Citrix Access Gateway.
- Custom reply text for the RADIUS client to display when using Access-Challenge (where supported by the RADIUS client).

5.13.4 RADIUS server ports and protocols

The MyID RADIUS server uses the IANA assigned ports for authentication and accounting, as well as the unofficial ports for backward compatibility with legacy RADIUS clients.

- Authentication:
 - UDP:1812
 - UDP:1645
- Accounting:
 - UDP:1812
 - UDP:1645

Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported for communication with RADIUS clients.



5.13.5 Adding a RADIUS client

A RADIUS client device is typically a VPN concentrator or remote access server; however, it can also be a wireless access point or a door access system. RADIUS is a common system used by a multitude of applications and platforms.

Note: This section of the installation process requires Local Administrator rights on the server. Domain rights are not required at this stage.

To add a RADIUS client:

1. Open the Network Policy Server from the Administrative Tools start menu group.



2. Expand the RADIUS Clients and Servers node, and select RADIUS Clients.





3. Right-click RADIUS Clients and click New.

New RADIUS Client		×
Settings Advanced		
☑ Enable this RADIUS client		
Select an existing template:		
	\sim	
Name and Address		
Eriendly name:		
VPN Server		
A <u>d</u> dress (IP or DNS):		
vpn.authlogicsdemo.com	<u>V</u> erify	
Shared Secret		
Select an existing Shared Secrets template:		
None	\sim	
To manually type a shared secret, click Manual. To automatically ge secret, click Generate. You must configure the RADIUS client with th secret entered here. Shared secrets are case-sensitive.		
Shared secret:		
••••••		
Confirm shared secret:		
•••••		
OK	Cancel	



- 4. On the **Settings** tab, set the following:
 - Enable this RADIUS client ensure that this option is enabled.
 - Friendly name a friendly name for the remote RADIUS client.
 - Address (IP address or DNS) the address of the RADIUS client.

To ensure that entered IP Address or DNS name is valid, click Verify.

 Shared secret – enter and confirm your shared secret, ensuring that the shared secret matches the secret entered on the RADIUS client device. You can also use the Generate option to generate a highly secure random secret.

Settings Advanced	
eetan ge	
Vendor Specify RADIUS Standard for most RADIUS clients, or select the RADIUS client vendor from the list.	
Vendor na <u>m</u> e:	
RADIUS Standard	\sim
Additional Options	
Access- <u>R</u> equest messages must contain the Message-Authenticator attribute	
ОК Са	ncel

- 5. On the **Advanced** tab, ensure that the following are set:
 - Vendor name must be set to RADIUS Standard.
 - Access-Request messages must contain the Message-Authenticator attribute – optional, but must be set the same as on the RADIUS client device.

Note: Ensure that the Message-Authenticator attribute status is set to the same value on the RADIUS client devices as on the RADIUS server. They can either both be enabled or both disabled.



6. Click OK.

Network Policy Server					-		Х
<u>File Action View H</u> elp							
🗢 🄿 🙍 📊 🛛 🖬							
 NPS (Local) RADIUS Clients and Servers RADIUS Clients Remote RADIUS Server Groups Policies Accounting Templates Management 	RADIUS Clients RADIUS c Friendly Name VPN Server	clients allow you to specify th IP Address vpn.authlogicsdemo.com	Device Manufacturer	ers, that provide access to y Status Enabled	vour netw	ork.	
	r						

You may add as many RADIUS clients as required.

5.13.6 RADIUS policies

The MyID Authentication Server installation automatically configures a Connection Request Policy within NPS, which allows MyID to support configured RADIUS clients automatically. A Network Policy is not required as the MyID NPS plug-in functions without one.

If you need to modify the default Connection Request Policy it is recommended that you duplicate (right-click, **Duplicate Policy**) the default policy as a backup and then disable it. Once complete you can modify the duplicated policy as needed.



6 Configuring MyID CMS settings

The MFA Broker Service module allows you to integrate the MyID credential management system (CMS) with MyID MFA. It allows you to use features from both products in an integrated fashion; for example, you can manage both smart cards and PIN grids for your users. The MFA Broker Service allows you to manage credentials in the MyID MFA system using the MyID CMS.

For instructions on configuring the connection between MyID CMS and MyID MFA, see the *MFA Broker Service* guide provided with the MFA Broker Service module.

You can configure the MyID CMS settings in the MyID Authentication Server through the **MyID CMS** tab in Global Settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties		
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator Application General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Polic FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence	у	
Intergration Settings		
CMS Server URL: https://myid/web.oauth2		
CMS Callback URL: https://myid/MFABroker		
Client ID: myid.notications		
Client Scope: myid.notications.basic		
Client Secret:		
OK Cancel Apply		



You require the following information to complete the configuration:

• **CMS Server URL** – the MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service URL. For example:

https://myid/web.oauth2

• **CMS Callback URL** – the MyID CMS MFA Broker Service URL. For example:

https://myid/MFABroker

• Client ID – the MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate.

For example: myid.notifications

• **Client Scope** – the MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate. For example:

myid.notifications.basic

• Client Secret – the MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate. For example:

4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d



7 Configuring the PSM password policy

To deploy the MyID PSM Password Policy:

- 1. In Active Directory Group Policy, create a MyID PSM Password Policy.
- 2. Deploy the Domain Controller Agent.
- 3. Make the following Group Policy changes:
 - Assign the MyID Password Policy to the Domain Controllers OU.
 - Assign the MyID Password Policy to the Authlogics Authentication Servers group.
 - Modify the built-in Default Domain Policy.

7.1 Configuring the MyID Password Policy settings

The MyID Authentication Server includes Active Directory Group Policy Template files AuthlogicsPasswordPolicy.admx and AuthlogicsPasswordPolicy.adml, which are used to create policies. The User Configuration section of the GPO can be disabled as the settings only apply to the Computer Configuration.

7.1.1 The PSM Users role

The PSM Users role is disabled by default. To enable it you must assign an Active Directory group to the role. For more information, see section *5.8.4*, *Managing the Password Security Management Users role*.

If the PSM Users role is not enabled, all Active Directory users have the MyID Password Policy applied to them. If enabled, only members of this group have the MyID Password Policy applied to them and non-members have the Exception Password Policy applied to them, which mirrors the equivalent default Windows password policy settings.



7.2 Main settings

Setting	Enable Authlogics Password Policy	
Values	Enabled / Disabled	
Default	Disabled	
Description	This policy setting enables the MyID Password Policy functionality on all Agents and Servers where this Group Policy is applied.	
	If you enable this policy complexity and validity checks will be performed on the passwords.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then no password processing will function as per the configured policy thus deeming all passwords as acceptable.	

7.2.1 Primary password policy

These settings control the MyID specific password policy. The default settings work in most scenarios and are NIST 800-63B compliant by default.

Setting	Disable Online Password Breach Database checking
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting prevents querying the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud consisting of billions of known previously breached passwords.
Description	If you enable this policy then no checks against the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy a partial HASH of the password will be sent over SSL to Intercede for analysis. The password will be rejected if it is a known/previously breached password to comply with to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Disable Offline Password Breach Database checking	
Values	Enabled / Disabled	
Default	Disabled	
	This policy setting prevents querying the offline MyID Password Breach Database installed on the MyID Authentication Server.	
Description	If you enable this policy then no checks against the offline MyID Password Breach Database will be performed.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy passwords will checked against the offline database and will be rejected if it is found in order to comp with NIST SP 800-63B.	


Setting	Disable Custom Password Blacklist checking
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents querying the custom Password Blacklist consisting of passwords entered by an administrator.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the custom Blacklist file will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then entered passwords will be compared with the contents of the custom blacklist file and is also be available for use by the heuristics engine. The password will be rejected if it is found on the custom blacklist to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Disable Shared Password Protection
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents checking if the password is already in use by another user account in the Domain.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the Domain for shared passwords will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy the Domain will be checked and the password will be rejected if it is currently in use.

Setting	Enable Passphrases
Values	(6 - 30)
Default	12
	This policy setting enables the use of passphrases if a password is longer than the specified value. Passphrases do not have to pass the following complexity checks if they are long enough: • Minimum Lowercase Characters
	Minimum Uppercase Characters
	Minimum Numeric Characters
	Minimum Special Characters
Description	Minimum Unicode Characters
	Maximum Repeating Characters
	Maximum Allowed Characters From Username
	If you enable this policy then the specified complexity checks will be skipped only if the password length is equal to or longer than the specified value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then users may find it difficult to set a passphrase as all configured complexity checks must pass.



Setting	Override Password Policy for new User Accounts
Values	(1 - 30)
Default	5
Description	This policy setting overrides password the password policy checks for accounts that have been created within a specified time period and will be accepted.
	If you enable this policy, specify the number of seconds from when an account has been created for it to be deemed as being a new account.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the password policy will apply to passwords specified during the Active Directory account creation process.

Setting	Disable Heuristic Scanning
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting controls the heuristic scanning engine behaviour on password checks. Heuristic scanning will undergo a series of checks where known character replacements are detected and reverted to their original base value and then revalidated for compliance. For example, '@' reverts to 'a', '!' to 'i' etc.
Description	If you enable this policy the heuristic scanning engine will not be active for any checks.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then heuristic scanning will be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B against the Offline Password Breach Database, Custom Password Blacklist, all or part of the username, and Month and Day names.

For more information on heuristic scanning, see section 7.5.1, *Heuristic scanning*.

Setting	Breached Passwords Check Type
Values	Default / Stemmed / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting enables alternate methods of password checking against both the online and offline Authlogics Password Breach Databases.
	If this policy is configured to Stemmed checking then any password checks performed will check for use of similar vulnerable passwords rather than strict password matches.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then password checks will perform the default method of strict checking passwords against whichever breach database is configured.

For more information on password stemming, see section 7.5.2, Password stemming.



7.2.2 Complexity rules

These settings provide fine grain control of password complexity settings.

If you set too many of these settings, users may find it too difficult to choose a memorable password, which may encourage them to write passwords down.

Setting	Disallow Incremental / Numeric-Only changes
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents changing only a single digit, or appending a single digit compared to the existing password.
	If you enable this policy then users must change more than just a single digit compared to their old password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then entered passwords with a simple numeric change from the previous password will be allowed.
	Note: This check requires that the PSM Wizard has been run and enabled on the domain.

Setting	Disallow First or Last Character being a number
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting disallows passwords that start or end with a numeric character.
	If you enable this policy then users cannot use a password that begins or ends with a number.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then passwords which start or end with a numeric character will be allowed.

Setting	Disallow Month and Day names
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting disallows the use of month and day names in the password.
	If you enable this policy a password will be rejected if a month or day name is found in an entered password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Disallow spaces
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting disallows the use of a space character in a password.
Description	If you enable this policy a password will be rejected if a space is found in an entered password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Password Length
Values	(4 - 127)
Default	8
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of characters allowed for a compliant password. Setting this value too high may make the password too difficult for users to remember password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is less than the value specified.
	Note: Consecutive space characters will be counted as a single space character as per NIST SP 800-63B guidance.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the default value of 8 will be used to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Maximum Password Length
Values	(4 - 127)
Default	127
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of characters allowed for a compliant password. Setting this value too low may stop users from selecting passphrases which are typically more secure than passwords. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is more than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the default value of 127 will be used to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.



Setting	Minimum Lowercase Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed lowercase characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of lowercase letters in the password is less than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Uppercase Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed uppercase characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of uppercase letters in the password is less than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Numeric Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed numeric digits a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of numeric digits in the password is less than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Minimum Special Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed special characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of special characters in the password is less than the value specified.
	The following are recognised as special characters ! " # % & ' () * , / : ; ? @ [\] _ { }'
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Unicode Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed Unicode characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of Unicode characters in the password is less than the value specified.
	Unicode characters are non-printable characters that are not punctuation or alphanumeric characters.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Maximum Repeating Characters
Values	(0 - 126)
Default	8
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a character can be repeated anywhere within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if a character is repeated in the password more times than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Maximum Consecutive Repeating Characters
Values	(0 - 126)
Default	3
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a character can be repeated anywhere within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if a character is repeated in the password more times than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.



Setting	Maximum Sequential Characters
Values	(0 - 127)
Default	3
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a sequence of characters can be used within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of characters in a sequence is more than the value specified.
	Sequential characters are both forward and backwards i.e. ABC and CBA are deemed to be sequential.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Maximum Sequential Keyboard Characters
Values	(0 - 5)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum sequential keyboard characters allowed within a compliant password. The password will be rejected if the number of keyboard layout characters in sequence is more than the value specified.
	Sequential characters are both forward and backwards i.e. " $\tt qwerty$ " and " $\tt ytrewq$ " with both be deemed to be sequential.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Maximum Allowed characters from User Account name
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	3
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of characters from a user account name that are allowed in a password. Passwords will be rejected if the number of characters from the user account name in a password is more than this value specified. e.g. If the user account name is Robert and the value is 3 then passwords containing "robe", "ober" and "bert" will be rejected. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Allow Full User Account name in password
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting allows the use of the full user account name within the password.
	If you enable this policy a password will not be blocked if the full user account name is found within the entered password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the password may not contain the full user account name to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

7.2.3 Dynamic password expiry

These settings dynamically control the maximum age of a password depending on its length. This allows for passwords to be used for longer the longer they are, which encourages users to create longer, and thus more secure, passwords.

A password is matched to the highest zone possible depending on the length of the password. When MyID detects that a password has dynamically expired, the user account is be configured to change password at next logon.

There are five password expiry zones, each consisting of a minimum password length and maximum password age in days. A sixth zone can be used to configure accounts to never expire if they are over the specified length.

Setting	Password Expiry Default Zone
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	42
	This policy setting configures the default password expiry period.
Description	If a password length is unknown or less than what is required by any other Zone then the Default Zone will apply.
	Note: If a password was created prior to installing MyID its length will be unknown and the Default Zone will apply. Once the password has been changed the length will be known and other Zones may then apply.
	If you enable this policy you must specify the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the setting will not take effect.



Setting	Password Expiry Zone 1			
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)		
Default	8 60			
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.			
Description If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Pa Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum days until the user account's password will be set to expire.		e effect and the Maximum Age in		
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.			

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 2		
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	
Default	90	90	
	 This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone. If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire. 		
Description			
If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone settir take effect.		policy then the zone setting will not	

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 3	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	10	180
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Pa Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum days until the user account's password will be set to expire.		e effect and the Maximum Age in
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	



Setting	Password Expiry Zone 4	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	11	270
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Pa Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum days until the user account's password will be set to expire.		e effect and the Maximum Age in
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 5	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	12	365
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	Description If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Pa Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum A days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Never Expires Zone	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	
Default	20	
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	





7.2.4 Exception password policy

These settings control the exception settings to the Primary Password Policy. The default settings mirror the equivalent default Windows password policy settings.

These settings apply only to the users who are *not* members of the PSM Users role, if you have configured a group for that role. For more information, see section 7.1.1, *The PSM Users role*.

Setting	Maximum Password Age	
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	
Default	42	
	This policy setting configures the maximum password age for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Minimum Password Length
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	7
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of characters allowed for a compliant password for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role. Setting this value too high may make the password too difficult for users to remember password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is less than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the default value of 7 will be used as per Windows password policy.

Setting	Mirror Windows 'Password Complexity' requirements
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting mirrors the Windows built in 'Password must meet complexity requirements' restriction for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role. This check ensures that a password does not contain the username, that it contains a minimum of 3 of the following character types: uppercase, lowercase, numeric, non-alphabetic/special characters. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



7.3 Modifying the default domain policy

The following password settings apply to the Default Domain Policy by default:

📓 📓 Eile <u>A</u> ction <u>V</u> iew <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	Group Policy Management		
🗢 🔿 🛛 🖬 🔍 🖓			
Group Policy Management ▲ ▲ Forest: authlogicsdemo.com ▲ ▲ Domains	Default Domain Policy Scope Details Settings Delegation Status		
 ▲ authlogicsdemo.com ⋒ Default Domain Policy > a Authlogics Groups > Authlogics Users 	Default Domain Policy Data colected on: 20/10/2017 12:14:37 Computer Configuration (Enabled) Policies		show all hide
 Domain Controllers Microsoft Exchange Security Groups 	Windows Settings		<u>hide</u>
Group Policy Objects	Security Settings		<u>hide</u>
Default Domain Controllers Policy	Account Policies/Password Policy		hide
Group Policy Group Policy Group Policy Modeling Group Policy Modeling Group Policy Results	Policy Erforce password history Maximum password age Minimum password age Minimum password length Password nust meet complexity requirements Store passwords using reversible encryption	Setting 24 passwords remembered 42 days 1 days 7 characters Enabled Disabled	
	Account Policies/Account Lockout Policy		<u>show</u>
	Account Policies/Kerberos Policy		show
	Local Policies/Security Options		<u>show</u>
	Public Key Policies/Encrypting File System		<u>show</u>
	User Configuration (Enabled)		hide
	No settings defined.		~

The following password settings for the Default Domain Policy must be changed so that the built-in Windows policy does not conflict with the MyID Password Policy and NIST guidance:

• Maximum password age: 0

This should be set to 0 when MyID PSM **Dynamic Password Complexity** is used, or to comply with NIST SP 800-63, which states that passwords should not periodically expire.

• Minimum password length: 1

This should be set to 1 so that it does not conflict with MyID PSM **Minimum Password Length** complexity rule setting.

• Passwords must meet complexity requirements: Disabled

This should be set to Disabled to allow the MyID PSM policy to function, or to comply with NIST SP 800-63B which states that passwords should not be forced to contain complexity rules.





Note: You *must not* set these settings to Not Configured, as this causes Windows to revert to default settings.

ile <u>A</u> ction <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp ■ ➡ Ź 💼 🔒 🛛 🖬		
Default Domain Policy [DC.AUTHLOGICSDEMO.COM ∧ Computer Configuration Policies Policies Windows Settings Windows Settings Scripts (Startup/Shutdown) Scripts (Startup/Shutdown) Backcount Policies Password Policy Password Policy Local Policies Local Policies Event Log Restricted Groups System Services Registry	Policy Enforce password history Maximum password age Minimum password length Password must meet complexity requirements Store passwords using reversible encryption	Policy Setting 24 passwords remembered 0 1 days 1 characters Disabled Disabled

7.4 Configuring custom password blacklist checking

MyID PSM provides administrators with the ability to add their own unwanted passwords to a blacklist text file. The blacklist allows for the rejection password based on full passwords as well as those matching wildcard characters, * and #. For more information on wildcard characters, see section 7.4.1, Wildcard usage within local blacklist.

The heuristics engine also adds further protection to the file by substituting common letter substitutions withing passwords, for example @ to a, and 5 to s.

To enable the local password blacklist, modify the contents of the following text file:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\blacklist.txt

Once a blacklist file has been updated it must be copied to all MyID Authentication Servers. The file is not required to be placed on Domain Controllers.

The custom blacklist can be disabled by emptying the contents of the file or by enabling the **Disable Custom Password Blacklist checking** Group Policy.

7.4.1 Wildcard usage within local blacklist

To enforce password rejection, full words and the wildcards characters * and # can be added to the local blacklist file. If a password matches what is defined in the local blacklist file, the password is rejected. How a password is processed depends on the positioning of the wildcard in the entry.

The wildcard * refers to any character for any length, if a * is entered on its own, all passwords are rejected.

The wildcard # refers to a single numeric character and translates to 9 - ## = 99. Numeric characters within passwords are converted to a number and then, if they are less than the restricted value, the password is rejected.



This table shows examples of how MyID Authentication Server processes a password based on the blacklist entry:

Blacklist Entry	Description	Password	Result
Authlogics	Reject any direct matches	Authlogics	Rejected
	to the restricted word	Authlogics01	Accepted
	Authlogics.		
Auth*	Reject any password	Authlogics	Rejected
	starting with Auth.	HelloAuthlogics	Accepted
Auth	Reject any password with	Authlogics01	Accepted
	Auth in the middle .	helloAuth123	Rejected
*Auth	Reject any password	helloAuth123	Accepted
	ending with Auth.	Authlogics	Accepted
		helloAuth	Rejected
Authlogics##	Reject any password	Authlogics12	Rejected
	starting with word	Authlogics12	Rejected
	Authlogics ending in two digits.	Authlogics112	Accepted
		Helloworld12	Accepted
##Authlogics	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Rejected
	starting with two digits and	123Authlogics	Accepted
	ending with the word Authlogics.		
##*	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Rejected
	starting with two digits.	Authlogics12	Accepted
		1Authlogics	Accepted
		123Authlogics	Rejected
*##	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Accepted
	ending with two digits.	Authlogics12	Rejected
		Authlogics123	Accepted
##	Reject any password with	-	
ור חד	two consecutive digits in	12Authlogics	Accepted
	the middle of the	Authlogics12 Auth12logics	Accepted Rejected
	password.	Authlogics123	Rejected Accepted
		Authiogresizs	Accepted



7.5 Advanced password checking

You can configure the following methods of advanced password checking through GPOs:

- Heuristic scanning.
- Password stemming.
- A combination of heuristic scanning and password stemming.

7.5.1 Heuristic scanning

Heuristic scanning replaces symbols and numbers with letters. By default, the following symbols are replaced:

Symbol	Possible replacements		
!	!il		
\$	s		
G	a		
1	1il		
5	5s		
3	Зе		
0	00		

Each symbol is replaced with one character from the possible replacements, and the resulting password is checked. If there are multiple possible replacements, each combination is checked.

Note: \$ and @ are never replaced by themselves.

For example, a password of MF@OFor3ver++, with heuristic scanning (but not password stemming) enabled, creates the following password variations:

```
MF@OFor3ver++ (the original password with no substitutions)
```

MFa0For3ver++

MFaoFor3ver++

MFa0Forever++

MFaoForever++

In the above example:

- The @ symbol is replaced with the letter a.
- The ${\tt 0}$ digit is replaced with the letter ${\tt o},$ or the digit ${\tt 0}.$
- The 3 digit is replaced with the letter e, or the digit 3.

Each combination of these substitutions is generated as a variation. Note that the @ symbol is replaced with the letter a only, and so does not generate any further combinations.

Each of these password variations is checked against the Offline Password Breach Database, Custom Password Blacklist, all or part of the username, and Month and Day names. This complies with NIST SP 800-63B.



Note: All instances of the same symbol in a password are replaced by the same replacement. For example, a password of MFA!sCoo!, with heuristic scanning (but not password stemming) enabled, creates the following password variations to be checked:

MFA!sCoo!

MFAisCooi

MFAlsCool

You can disable heuristic scanning using the **Disable Heuristic Scanning** GPO. For more information, see section 7.2.1, *Primary password policy*.

7.5.2 Password stemming

Password stemming strips out symbols and numbers, and changes all letters to lowercase.

This new, stemmed password is checked against the MyID Password Breach Database and the blacklists (unless the stemmed password is less than six characters, or has been reduced to less than 60% of the password's original size).

Original password	Stemmed password	Checked	Description
MF@OFor3ver++	mfaforver	Yes	
we<3MFA	wemfa		Stemmed password not checked because it is less than six characters long.
+We+all+<3+MF@+	weallmf		Stemmed password not checked because it is less than 60% of the password's original size.

For example if you have password stemming (but not heuristic scanning) configured:

You can enable heuristic scanning by enabling the **Breached Passwords Check Type** GPO and setting it to stemmed. For more information on enabling heuristic scanning, see section 7.2.1, *Primary password policy*.

When the **Breached Passwords Check Type** GPO is enabled, and the value is set to <code>stemmed</code>, if the user is performing offline breach checks and you want them to do to do password stemming checks, the user *must* have the offline <code>Full and stem</code> databases installed; if the user has only the <code>Full or Min</code> offline password breach database, no password stemming checks occur.



7.5.3 Using both heuristic scanning and password stemming

If you have enabled both heuristic scanning and password stemming, MyID PSM uses them in combination.

For example, with both heuristic scanning and password stemming enabled, a password of MF@OFor3ver creates the following password variations:

mfaoforever mfaforever mfaoforver mfaforver

mfforver

Each of these password variations is then checked against the MyID Password Breach Database and the blacklists.



8 Advanced configuration

Advanced configuration options for MyID are controlled using the Windows registry. The following entries are created during the installation of MyID server components and most of them should typically only be changed if instructed by Intercede support.

Note: After changing a registry key on the MyID Server, the IIS components must be restarted by running IISRESET from an elevated admin command prompt.

You can carry out the following:

- Specify Active Directory Domain Controllers.
 See section 8.1, Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers.
- Add an SSL certificate. See section 8.2, Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections.
- Configure the connection timeout for Active Directory. See section 8.3, Active Directory timing.
- Log diagnostic messages.

See section 8.4, Diagnostics logging.

Important: Changing other registry values is *not* supported unless instructed by Intercede Support.



8.1 Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers

The MyID Authentication Server automatically locates Domain Controllers as needed. In environments where network segmentation exists, the MyID Authentication Server may not be able to contact all Domain Controllers. This can cause connectivity problems and logon delays.

In these environments, you can specify which Domain Controllers and Global Catalog Servers should be used using registry keys. Each key can contain one or many server names (FQDN recommended) separated by commas.

8.1.1 Specifying Global Catalog Servers

To specify the global catalog server to access from the MyID Authentication Server, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainGCs

By default, this is blank.

Accepted values:

• One or more server names (FQDN recommended), separated by commas.

Used by components: MyID Authentication Server; Management Console

The MyID Authentication Server attempts to connect to each specified global catalog server and then remains connected to the server that responds to LDAP queries the quickest.

Note: This setting disables the auto-detect global catalog servers functionality within MyID.

8.1.2 Specifying Domain Controllers

To specify the Domain Controllers to access from the MyID Authentication Server, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainDCs

By default, this is blank.

Accepted values:

• One or more Domain Controller names (FQDN recommended), separated by commas.

Used by components: MyID Authentication Server; Management Console

The MyID Authentication Server attempts to connect to each specified Domain Controller and then remains connected to the server that responds to LDAP queries the quickest. The MyID Authentication Server initially finds the names of all the Domains in the Forest, and the Domain Controllers in each Domain by querying the Global Catalog. It then maps the results against the Domain Controllers list in the registry to calculate which server to use for each Domain. If a Domain does not have a Domain Controllers specified, one is selected automatically.

Note: This setting disables the auto-detect Domain Controller functionality within MyID.



8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections

When replacing the self-signed SSL certificate on the MyID server with an alternative from a trusted root authority, the certificate must obey the following:

- The Common Name (CN or SAN) in the certificate must match the DNS value use by MyID agents or make use of a wide card certificate.
- The certificate must be trusted by all systems that connect directly to the MyID server.

To do the replacing, using Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager, edit the HTTPS IIS bindings for the MyID web site and select the new SSL certificate.

8.3 Active Directory timing

You can set the following values in the registry:

- Domain access timeout.
- Domain controller refresh.

8.3.1 Domain access timeout

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainAccessTimeout

Default value: 60

Accepted values:

- 0 disabled, indefinite timeout.
- 1 to 120 timeout in seconds.

The time taken in seconds before a connection established by a MyID component to a Domain Controller times out.

8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainControllerRefeshTime

Default value: 15

Accepted values:

• 1 to 9999 – timeout in minutes.

The time taken in minutes before a new search is done to locate the quickest Global Catalog Server and Domain Controller.



8.4 Diagnostics logging

You can control the diagnostics logging using the Windows registry.

8.4.1 Enabling logging

To enable or disable diagnostics logging, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingEnabled

The default value is 0.

Accepted values:

- 0-disabled.
- 1 enabled.

When you enable this value, various log files are created in the logging folder. Intercede support may request these logs from you.

8.4.2 Setting the logging location

To control the location of the log files, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingFolder

The default value is:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Log\

Accepted values:

• Any valid local folder with the same NTFS permissions as the default folder.

8.4.3 Setting the retention time for rolling logs

Old logs are deleted after a specified interval has passed; for example, after three days (which is the default), or two months. You specify this retention time using the interval type (LoggingRollingIntervalType) – for example, days or months, and the number of intervals (LoggingFileCountLimit) – for example, three (days) or two (months).

To set the interval type, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingRollingIntervalType

The default value is 3 (days).

Accepted values:

- 0 Infinite time between rolling logs this means that old logs are never deleted.
- 1-Years.
- 2 Months.
- 3 Days.
- 4 Hours.
- 5 Minutes.

This setting also determines when new logs are created; for example, new logs are created every day, or every year. Multiple logs may be created within each interval depending on the size limit you have set for the logs; see section *8.4.4*, *Size limit of rolling log files*.



To set the number of intervals of logs stored, for example, three (days) or two (months), set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingFileCountLimit

The default value is 3 – after three intervals, the logs from the first interval are deleted.

Accepted values:

• A number of intervals.

8.4.4 Size limit of rolling log files

New log files are created every interval (for example, every day, or every month). To prevent these files from becoming too large, you can set the maximum size of each log file. When this size is reached, a new log file is created within the same interval; for example, if you are using day interval logs:

AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250325-0001.log

AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250325-0002.log

or for year interval logs:

AuthlogicsIdentityServer-2025-0001.log

AuthlogicsIdentityServer-2025-0002.log

To set the maximum size of each log file, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingRollingSizeLimit

The default value is 20 megabytes.

Accepted values:

• A number in megabytes.

Note: This setting does not reduce the total size of the logs; by limiting the size of the individual files, it increases the number of files.



8.4.5 Example of rolling logs

With the default values of:

- LoggingRollingIntervalType 3 (day intervals)
- LoggingFileCountLimit 3 (three days)
- LoggingRollingSizeLimit 20 (MB)

Old log files are deleted after three days.

An example of rolling log files produced starting on the March 25th 2025 is:

```
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250325-0001.log
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250325-0002.log
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250326-0002.log
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250326-0003.log
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250327-0001.log
AuthlogicsIdentityServer-20250327-0002.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250325-0001.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250325-0002.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250326-0002.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250326-0002.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250326-0003.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250326-0003.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250327-0001.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250327-0001.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250327-0001.log
AuthlogicsRestApi-20250327-0001.log
```

Each day has several files, each with a maximum size of 20 megabytes. When the logger starts writing to the first file of March 28th, the cleanup process is triggered, deleting the files from March 25th, as those are then more than three days old.



9 Integration with external systems

Intercede provides integration guides for various external systems that may include step-bystep instructions or custom integration components.

You are recommended to use the *MyID Authentication Server Developers Guide* when planning to access the MyID Authentication Server programmatically for automation, scripting, or app integration. You can achieve extensive provisioning and workflow integration by using the Web Services APIs to create, delete, enable, disable accounts.

You can integrate MyID Authentication Server with any other external or third-party systems using Web Services or RADIUS, or a combination of the two.

If you are using Multi-Factor Authentication with an SSL VPN, no logon screen customization is required as a logon challenge is not displayed on a login screen. In this scenario a soft token, hardware token, or a SMS/TEXT token must be used, and the SSL VPN can use RADIUS to validate login requests.

If you are using deviceless authentication with an SSL VPN, you need to modify the login page of the SSL VPN to display a challenge. The SSL VPN can request the image from the MyID server using the GetToken.ashx web service with some coding effort. The SSL VPN can still use RADIUS to validate login requests but may alternatively use Web Services, if supported by the SSL VPN vendor.